Acquired 1976
The Gift of
Russell Arundel

TB Racing

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF

THE ENGLISH RACE HORSE.

204-

A TREATISE

ON THE

CARE, TREATMENT, AND TRAINING

OF THE

ENGLISH RACE HORSE:

IN A

SERIES OF ROUGH NOTES.

BY

RICHARD DARVILL, V. S.,

LATE OF THE 7TH HUSSARS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED BY JAMES RIDGWAY, 169, PICCADILLY.

1846.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Introduction 1

CHAPTER I.

On the Formation of the Race Horse . . . 5

CHAPTER II.

Difference between the *thorough-bred Horse and the Cock-tail*, and the manner of running one against the other . 20

CHAPTER III.

The necessary Knowledge to be acquired by Noblemen and Gentlemen of the Turf 26

CHAPTER IV.

Practical Observations with which the Reader should make himself thoroughly acquainted, previously to his commencing the Training of Horses to run . . . 34

CHAPTER V.

First class of Horses and Mares returning from a Summer's running to the home stables; the arranging of those Horses and Mares in their boxes; and the treatment of them therein, during the three Winter months . 50

CHAPTER VI.

PAGE

The second class of Horses and Mares returning from a Summer's running to the home stables; the arranging of those Horses and Mares in separate stall stables; and the treatment of them in the stables; as also when they are out at exercise, during the three Winter months . 69

CHAPTER VII.

Straw Beds for the Horses to exercise upon in frosty and snowy weather; stating under what circumstances it may occasionally be necessary to alter the Betting . 96

CHAPTER VIII.

Instructions to be given by the Training Groom to half a dozen of his lightest and best riding boys, such as will have to receive his principal or secret orders, when they are put up to ride Horses of a particular description . 106

CHAPTER IX.

Walking Exercise 115

CHAPTER X.

Galloping Exercise 119

CHAPTER XI.

Wind 136

CHAPTER XII.

Feeding Horses in Training on Corn . . . 143

CHAPTER XIII.

PAGE
Watering Horses while they are in Training . . 152

CHAPTER XIV.

Teaching Yearlings 160

CHAPTER XV.

Physicking Yearlings . . . 178

CHAPTER XVI.

Training Yearlings 182

CHAPTER XVII.

Sweating the first class of Yearlings . . 190

CHAPTER XVIII.

Sweating the second and third class of Yearlings . 194

CHAPTER XIX.

Trying of Yearlings 198

CHAPTER XX.

Running Yearlings 208

CHAPTER XXI.

Half a dozen craving Horses doing their first sweat early in March 220

CHAPTER XXII.

PAGE
Sweating continued 245

CHAPTER XXIII.

Training of Two-year Olds . . . 271

CHAPTER XXIV.

Trying of Two-year Olds 280

CHAPTER XXV.

The Training Groom's Reflections, after having tried a couple of Colts, both as Yearlings and as Two-year Olds, with the opinion he has formed of them as to how they may run 299

CHAPTER XXVI.

The Training Groom conversing privately with three of his best Riding Boys 307

INTRODUCTION.

If training, running, and riding of race horses is not to be considered as a science, I think it may be fairly admitted, that it is a species of knowledge that can only be acquired by early experience, as by boys being put into training stables at twelve years of age, there to remain under a good practical training groom for at least ten or twelve years; and that it is only by the early impressions made on the minds of steady attentive boys, while they are going progressively on throughout the whole practical gradations, both in and out of the stables, that they, on arriving at a state of manhood, become equal to undertaking, in every department of it, the management of a racing establishment.

The first volume I published on the training of the English race horse may be said to be a sort of ground-work or introduction, containing such pre-

paratory and essential matter as I considered was necessary for my readers to become thoroughly acquainted with, previous to their entering upon the more minute and detailed parts of my subject, viz. the training horses to run. And, as far as I have proceeded in the subsequent chapters of this volume, I have endeavoured to lay down the rules for training race horses with as much perspicuity as possible.

In the training and running of them, the changing of circumstances must occasionally alter things, which of course will be the cause of exceptions to some of the rules I have made mention of. I could readily quote a variety of examples, but such quotations would be but of little use, beyond that of enlarging this volume—a sort of thing I wish to avoid. I have therefore thought it better to lay down generally the whole of the practical principles, as well as all the minute details. Thinking it necessary, I have been led to mention, in different chapters, the above general practical principles very frequently: it may be considered by some of my readers, that I have made too great a repetition in this respect: but those of them who know what little trifling circumstances of neglect or mis-management will cause horses in training to change considerably for the

worse, can well understand the necessity of my being thus particularly minute, so as clearly to elucidate, as far as I have gone on with the subject, all matters relative to the management of race horses while they are being trained.

In this volume, as in my first, I have in many parts expressed myself in the language (if it may be so termed) of the turf, not, I confess, because such language is the most refined or gentlemanly, but because I think it necessary for such noblemen and gentlemen as are engaged in turf matters readily to understand the conversation of the business people of their stables. This language, used by trainers, jockeys, and stable boys, when they are conversing with each other on business, is very expressive, that is to say, they understand each other in very few words; and where I have thought the terms used not generally intelligible, I have explained them. Indeed, that my meaning may not be misconstrued, I have endeavoured, as far as I have proceeded with the management of the condition of thorough-bred horses, to elucidate as clearly as I possibly could, the manner of feeding, clothing, watering, exercising, or working of all of them, agreeably to their ages and constitutions. How correctly I may have succeeded in arranging all these matters, I must leave to the

consideration of those of my readers, who are known to be thorough good practical judges of how race horses should be treated when lying by in Winter, as well as how they should be treated while they are in training during Spring, Summer, and Autumn.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE FORMATION OF THE RACE HORSE.

Some authors have been of opinion that the just proportions of a horse may be ascertained by measurements, as that of multiplying and dividing of different parts; how far such measurements may be correct I cannot pretend to say. The method I shall take of describing the shape and make of the animal is from practical observation. Nor is it my intention to explain this matter by a greater variety of anatomical phrases than is absolutely necessary, as this would not perhaps be of much advantage to those of my readers whose principal object is to obtain a knowledge of the shape and make of horses that are intended for the purpose of racing; suffice it therefore to say, that the bones of the horse, like those of almost all other animals, are of a white hard substance; they form and support the animal's frame, and protect in a great measure such of his organs as are important to life; they consist of many joints which are connected together by strong substances, called ligaments; and the whole is termed

the skeleton, to which are attached the muscles and tendons; of which such as are under the will of the mind are the organs of motion.

I now commence to describe what I consider a well-formed race horse; and I will here remark, that it is this description of horse to which my observations are principally confined. With regard to the height of such a horse, I confess I am not partial to a tall, overgrown one. I prefer one moderately low, as *fifteen hands, or fifteen* and an *inch* at most, having length with good substance. If there is a standard of perfection for the height of a race horse, for general purposes, perhaps, his height may be fifteen hands two inches. Yet, I do not presume to dictate to my readers the precise height such a horse should be. A horse of either of the above mentioned heights, but particularly of the first, if well formed and having good actions, will be very likely to become what may be termed a good fair runner, that is, when his speed as a young one, in the running of short lengths, may in some degree have left him, he afterwards becomes stout, and will, most likely, be capable of running under high weights, as twelve stone for example, for any of his Majesty's plates, at long racing lengths, as from two to four miles; which weights and lengths are still in use at some of our country racing meetings. Tall horses are those from sixteen hands to sixteen and a half, or seventeen hands high, most of which are bred in the south.

Of course, such horses are bred so over-sized for no other purpose than to go into those great stakes run for at Newmarket, as the two thousand, the Riddlesworth, and other valuable stakes and matches, almost all of which are run for over straight courses of short lengths, as across the Flat at Newmarket; the very high state of condition into which such horses are brought to post at two and three years old, enables them to run for those valuable prizes at the above-named place; and from hence to Epsom, to run for the Derby and Oaks; again from Epsom to Ascot—which latter place has now become, from the very liberal patronage of his late Majesty, one of the most pleasing and respectable racing meetings we have in England. At each of the above-mentioned meetings are those fine large long-striding horses found to be running; yet such horses, generally speaking, are seldom heard much of after running at the above-named places; they are therefore afterwards frequently turned to the stud.

Now, the low lengthy horse of substance, although as I have already observed, that his speed as a young one, at two or three years old, may in some degree have left him, yet afterwards becomes stout and capable of running on under high weights, at long lengths, over any sort of course, whether hilly or otherwise, and being, as he mostly is, a round-goer, he is tolerably handy at his turns; and whenever such a horse is running in the company of long-striding horses on a small cock-pit or whip-top

sort of course, he is almost certain to be a winner. Indeed, as far as my own observations have gone on this subject, I think there is no comparison to be made as to which of the two horses are of the most general utility. I certainly prefer the low lengthy horse of substance to the tall, oversized, leggy, long striding one.

I now come to describe, in as clear a manner as I am capable of, how I think a horse should be formed to race. His head should be small and lean; his ears small and picked; his eyes brilliantly large; his forehead broad and flat—we mean by this he should have a deer-like sort of face; and from the lower part of the forehead, down to a certain portion of the nostrils, there should be, for a small space or length, a gradual curve or slight concavity; from this point downwards, the nose should be somewhat raised, and the nostrils should be so large, as, when the horse's respiration has, by exertion, been increased, the red membrane lining them should be easily seen during the time of his blowing hard. His muzzle, or mouth, should be proportionably small, and his lips thin, appearing, as it were, by their muscular contraction in covering the gums and teeth, as if they were closely attached to them. His throat should be clean and fine from the butt of the ear down to its centre, with a good wide space between the jaw bones, which latter should be thin. The throat and the hollow space between the jaws, if well formed, bears a strong resemblance, in point

of shape, to those parts in a game cock ; and a man who is a good judge, on looking at a horse and seeing him well formed about his throat, would be apt to say (using a very common expression,) I like him in this part, for he has a cock's throttle.

The neck should be moderate in length. I prefer its being wide ; I mean its width should be formed by the substance of muscles which pass along each side of the top part of it ; from the withers to the head it may gradually rise a little in its centre, but by no means to any extreme, as I have a great aversion to a high-crested race horse. Indeed, I would prefer that his neck should be as I have described his face, rather of the ewe or deer-like shape, than that it should be loaded on top, which I will bye-and-bye explain. As to the lower part of the neck, I have no very particular remarks to make, further than that the trachea, or wind-pipe, should be spacious and loosely attached to the neck on its way to the lungs.

The withers may be moderately high, and, if the reader like, they may also be moderately thin ; but, with respect to this latter point, I am not so very particular, provided the shoulders lay well back. From the withers the back commences. I confess, that appearances may be in favour of a horse that has his back a little low or hollow. As a saddle horse this may be all very well, but for a race horse, to have strength and liberty of stride, his back should be straight and *moderately* long, with the shoulders

and loins running well in at each end. The loins should have great breadth and muscular substance, so much so as for them to have the appearance of being raised as it were on their surface; and those muscles posterior to the loins should fill up level the top part of the quarters to the setting on of the tail, which latter should be set on pretty high up, and in its commencement should extend a little out from the quarters, hanging straight down to near the hocks. At Newmarket, in my time, such tails were called the "Bunbury switches." Bye-the-bye, there is a part under the tail, of which, as I am now so near it, and as it is a point of some importance, it may not be out of place to give a short description: — the anus, or fundament, should contract into a small compass, nor should there appear much, or, indeed, scarcely any space round its surrounding sides; for this is a part that should be small, close, and well formed in all descriptions of horses. The muscles by which it is surrounded should be contracted into small folds; nor can the main sphincter muscle act too powerfully in contracting the anus, not only after the calls of nature are performed, but it should, I again repeat, at all times be invariably small, close, and tight, and rather projecting than otherwise, as it is one of the best or as good a constitutional point as any I am acquainted with belonging to the horse. If the fundament of a horse is as we have here described, and he has a great width between his hips, with a good broad surface of loins, as also a spacious

chest, his having those four constitutional points will make up well for any apparent deficiency of the want of carcass; and, further, a horse thus formed, as regards the whole of the points mentioned, is at all times a good feeder, and with little trouble he is soon got ready to run, as he is invariably a good winded horse.

I now come to speak of the body, or what is by some people commonly called the "middle-piece" of the horse, and which is divided, internally, into two cavities, by a muscular substance called the "diaphragm." The anterior cavity, the chest, contains the lungs, the heart, &c. The posterior one, the abdomen, contains the stomach, intestines, liver, kidneys, &c. Now, with respect to the external form of the body, which contains and protects all those numerous organs so important to life, I shall first make my observations on the chest. To use a common phrase, and somewhat an expressive one, a horse in this part should be what is called "well over the heart," that is, he should be deep in his girth, round or well arched in his ribs. I mean by this, that a rider on the back of a race horse (as they are generally better about the chest than horses in common use) should feel he has some breadth or substance between his legs: and there should be a good swell of muscle before his knees, or centre of the flaps of the saddle. The chest, thus spaciously formed, gives room for respiration, so that, in training, the horse's wind can be brought to the greatest

perfection, which enables him to run on in long lengths.

The next part to be treated of is the abdomen, or belly, or what is usually called the carcass.—It may, perhaps, appear a little strange, but I have a great aversion to what is commonly called a good carcassed horse, nor am I particularly partial to a large sheathed one. I like both these parts to be in the medium, as I do, also, that of his being well ribbed up. It is true, that a horse's being well ribbed up denotes strength, and a short close-made race horse is, in running, handy at his turns, and, as I have already noticed, he is generally a pretty good one under high weights over a small round cock-pit course; but this description of course and sort of running is not now so much practised as formerly, or rather, it is a sort of racing that does not exactly suit long-striding horses, as most of those are that run at Newmarket. Another thing is, that horses with large carcasses are mostly great gluttons; they put up flesh very rapidly, and are very difficult and troublesome to train in consequence of their constitutions being too strong, or proportionably too much for their feet and legs. Such horses not only seldom remain long in training, but they cannot be kept long in condition, without their becoming stale in themselves, as also on their legs, and those are my reasons for objecting to very large carcassed horses; yet, I do not wish horses to be what is termed "tucked up," or waspish in their carcasses. I like a horse's carcass to be in the

medium, that is, it should be straight and handsome from behind the girths of his saddle; and what will make up sufficiently well, and give him sufficient strength of constitution, is the well formation of the parts already noticed, as the chest, the loins, and the fundament.

To return to the fore-extremities. The shoulders commence from a little below the withers; they should lie most particularly well back; should be deep, broad, and muscularly strong: yet those muscular parts should appear to the eye as being moderately so, that is, not unproportionably loaded: these muscles should be distinctly seen, there should be no appearance of fat, or, as it is technically termed, "adipose membrane." The shoulders cannot well be too oblique in their descent to the front of the chest; here, on each side, a joint is formed by the lower part of the scapula or shoulder-blade being united with the upper part of the humerus or arm-bone. Those joints, thus formed, are usually called the points of the shoulders; which points should appear straight or level. There should be no coarse, projecting, or heavy appearance about the points of the shoulders of such horses as are intended to race; nor indeed does this often occur, unless where it happens that the chest or counter of a horse is unproportionably wide. In taking a front view of the chest, it should appear moderate as to breadth; and if its prominency is at all to the extreme, it should be in consequence of the fulness or substance

of those muscles covering the breast, which muscles should be lengthy, and their divisions distinctly to be observed.

The fore-arm should be broad and long, and most particularly well furnished with muscles on its top parts, inside as well as out; I mean by this, that the muscles on the top and inside of the arm should here be so large as to leave but a moderate space between the fore-legs, immediately under the chest; and which muscles should appear, as those in front of the chest, distinctly divided. The posterior part of the top of the arm is called the "elbow:" this should appear (the horse in condition) somewhat on a level with the body: if it at all deviates from this appearance, I would prefer its standing in, to that of its standing unproportionably out. The knee-joint should be large, broad, and flat in front; generally speaking, the larger and broader all joints are in reason the better and stronger they are; and the longer, coarser, and rougher their projecting points or *processes* are, the greater and more secure will be the *lever* for the muscles or tendons to act upon, provided such projecting parts or joints (as the hocks and pasterns) do not amount to disease, as that of producing spavins and ringbones. The leg, from the knee to the fetlock, cannot well be too short, neither can they well be too broad or too flat, nor their flexor tendon scarcely be too large, or appearing too distinctly divided, as it were, from the leg. The fetlock joint should also be large, and the pastern

proportionably strong, but its length and obliquity should be in the medium.

The wall or crust of the feet should also be moderately oblique, with the heels open, and frogs sound; this, indeed, is generally the state of racing colts on first leaving their paddocks, if their feet have been paid proper attention to during the time they may have remained there. Yet the feet of such of them as have been some time in work, will occasionally get out of order; they grow upright and strong; the horn gets hard and brittle; and the heels more or less contracted—almost all of which defects are too often occasioned from the want of proper attention being paid to them at the time of shoeing, and of proper applications being applied to them in the stables. With regard to the structure of such horses' feet, and the diseases of them, as also the method of shoeing and plating them, a description will be found in the different chapters on those subjects in the first volume. Previous to concluding my remarks on the fore-extremities, it may not be amiss to observe to the reader, that, supposing him to stand opposite to these parts of the horse, if the animal is formed in them as I have already described, the centre of the top part of the fore-arm, to be well placed, ought to be nearly or quite in a parallel line with the top or front part of the horse's withers; and again, from the top part of the fore-arm down to the foot, for the horse to stand firm and well, and have the power of using his fore legs well, he should stand perfectly

straight on them; I mean by this, they are not to appear too much under him, or too much out or away from him. Suppose again, for example, a man standing in front of the horse, and here taking a view of the foot, the centre part of the wall or crust should be in or on a parallel line with that lower part or joint of the shoulder, commonly termed its point. A horse's feet, thus placed, will neither be too much out or too much in; but should his feet deviate from what I have here observed, by amounting to a fault, in turning too much out or too much in, I should prefer their being a little out, to that of the other extreme, of turning in, and being what is called "pigeon-toed."

I shall now proceed to describe the hind-quarters, or posterior extremities. As may be supposed, the well-formation of those parts is of the utmost importance to a race horse in his running; it is, therefore, necessary that they should be, in breadth, substance, and length, of very superior dimensions. The hips should have a great breadth between them; and if they are a little coarse or projecting, so much the better, provided such coarse projections are not in the extreme, or appear vulgar or unsightly. From the centre and posterior part of the loins to the top of the tail is called the "croup," and should be of great length, and, if it deviates from that of a straight line, it may be somewhat arched in the centre; the croup being thus formed gives great breadth to the top of the quarters, the length of which, from the

croup down to the hock, cannot scarcely be of too great an extent, in order that there may be sufficient room here for the attachment of those broad, powerful, lengthy, and distinctly divided muscles on the outside of the quarters and thighs; and there should also be a similar portion of such muscles on the inside of the quarters and thighs; so that a man, who is a good judge, taking a posterior view, may observe how the horse is made. In this position he should be, as it were, struck by the appearance of the great breadth and length of the back part of the quarters; and as he moves his head to the right or left, the centre and outside of the quarters and thighs, and the swell of the muscles, should appear beyond a level with the hips. The upper part of the muscles on the inside of the quarters should appear quite close to each other, so that no vacant space should be visible between them, as that of an appearance of the horse being (if I may thus express myself) chucked up in the fork. Such should be the lengthy and muscular quarters of a well-made race horse.

The stifle-joint should be in a direct line under the hip, and the length from this joint to that of the hock cannot reasonably be too long, and the farther out of the angular or oblique position of the thigh bone the better, so as to admit of the back part or projecting point of the hock appearing some distance out beyond the top of the hind quarters; those parts being thus formed, admit of a very considerable lever for the main tendon here to act upon

the tendon Achilles, which, like the flexor one of the leg, can scarcely be too large or too distinctly seen in its commencement from the lower part of the quarter to its insertion into the posterior or projecting point of the hock—the os calcis. The hock should be broad and wide, with a clean, lean appearance, and those soft parts, which are occasionally the seat of thorough-pins, and bog spavins, in a sound well-formed hock, should appear more as cavities than as having the above-mentioned projections, and which are sometimes the cause of lameness. The hind leg like the fore one, should be short, broad, flat, and straight, the trifling angle formed by the hock should, together with the moderate obliquity of the pastern, bring the extremity of the toe nearly under the stifle-joint.

I now conclude my remarks on the formation or shape and make of the race horse; how far my description of the animal may meet the approbation of my readers is another matter. I have merely given my opinion as far as my own practical observation authorizes me, in the pointing out of such parts of the horse as require to be of capacious dimensions, and such other parts as require to be of substance and length; the former giving strength to his constitution, and the latter giving to the mechanism of his form force of power; both of which are very well known to be requisite to all race horses in the running of long lengths under high weights.

As it would be difficult, I expect, to find a race horse as I have here described he should be, allowances ought therefore to be made in the engaging of any race horse to run, according to the powers he may possess, and similar allowances should also be made in the purchasing of this or any other description of horse. The way I have always made such allowances, in the purchasing of horses, is, after having examined him thoroughly as to his constitutional and other points, if I find the good points he has overbalance his bad ones, and that he has action (particularly in his walk), and is sound, I buy him, unless indeed the price asked for him should be very considerably above his value.

Before I conclude this chapter, with due submission to my readers, I will here remark, that I think if breeders were to be more cautious in selecting the horses and the mares they intend to breed from, as to how they were bred, and the running properties they may have possessed, and if they were to be more attentive as to how they cross their mares, they would arrive much nearer at perfection than they do with regard to their produce. But as this is a subject I intend treating on at some future period, nothing more need be said of it here.

CHAPTER II.

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE THOROUGH-BRED HORSE AND THE COCK-TAIL, AND THE MANNER OF RUNNING ONE AGAINST THE OTHER.

Why thorough-bred horses so far surpass half-bred ones, is not only from the circumstance of their being thorough-bred, but because they are bred to race; consequently greater pains are taken in selecting of the dams and sires of such superior shape and make, with known good running properties, and kindness of temper, as may be thought best to answer the purpose of insuring good stock to the breeder, as it is natural to conclude that the produce will, more or less, inherit, either from their dams or sires, some of the above-mentioned good qualities. If the frame or bones of the blood horse be proportionably well-formed, he will have a spacious capacity of chest, with width of loins, together with breadth, length, and substance of his muscular and tendonous system. If the symmetry of those parts all coincide with each other, they are all of them, in the blood horse, much more compact, or closer in their texture, than the half-bred one. This description of horse is, therefore, unincumbered with

any superfluous matter. In short, the thorough-bred horse, being well-formed, has considerably more power in less compass than any other horse that may not have been so highly bred. The advantage this horse has over the coarse half-bred one is, that he is capable, when it may be required of him, to go longer lengths in his gallops and sweats. A good training groom can, therefore, bring his wind and muscular system to greater perfection, by which this sort of horse is enabled to run on longer racing lengths, with much more ease to himself than any other horse of larger dimensions, that may not, as I have before noticed, be quite so well bred. Those are the assigned reasons why a thorough-bred horse can almost always beat a half-bred one in a long race, provided that the former be made proper use of sufficiently early in the running, whatever the length of the course may be, as a mile or two, or more.

Now, by way of example, let us suppose two horses are engaged to run together in a match, one a middling, good, thorough-bred horse, the other a good cock-tail. The trainer of the well-bred horse, in due time, on the morning the race may take place, talks over the subject of his orders to his jockey, as to how he wishes his horse to be ridden in the race. The jockey, of course, being a good judge of pace, the trainer says to him, "You must mind, although our horse is a ready comer, he is no jade. Therefore, in making use of him, take

care you don't over set him; yet, be sure you let him come off sufficiently early in the race;" the trainer, perhaps, naming at what part of the ground he thinks it will be best for the jockey to commence running with his horse. Again, he goes on to say, "Mind you come a pretty good telling-pace with our horse, so as to draw their horse well out to the top of his pace; having done so, don't leave him, but stay with him and keep him at the pace, until you are sure you have got him thoroughly well beat, before you come too near home. You may then finish the race, to satisfy the crowd." Unless such a race as we have described is run pretty much as we have advised, the cock-tail, or half-bred horse, may beat the thorough-bred one, if the latter is allowed to run his own race; that is, if he is allowed to run within himself until he comes within a short distance of home, when he is very likely to be quite as fast, or, perhaps, a little faster than the thorough-bred one, and, if so, he would consequently win the match. Now, with regard to how the cock-tail, or half-bred horse is to be ridden, when running in company with a certain number of horses, at a country meeting, five or six perhaps, that may be entered in a stake or handycap, at five sovereigns each, with something added by the stewards, and that the whole of the horses, according to their breeding and running properties, are very fairly weighed—the trainer of the half-bred horse, in quietly talking to his jockey on the day of running

for the stakes just mentioned, says to him, "The horse we have most to be afraid of in the race is such a one," naming the horse to the jockey, observing at the same time, that he will be rather a busy horse in the running;—"You must, therefore, not attempt to go to the head with our horse, for the shorter the race is for him the better he will like it; the only chance we have to win is to wait, and if we are not beat before we come within the distance, we are, I know, faster than the majority of them for this length; and we may, perhaps, be faster than the whole of them for it. But if there should be too much running made for our horse, and he should be beat for pace before he comes within his own rally, take a pull, and decline the race; do not attempt running for a place. In short, if we cannot be first pretty cleverly, it is most likely we cannot be second; and if we could, it is a bad place, as it only exposes one's horse; and, as the entrance money, in this instance, is scarcely worth saving, we will not abuse or punish our horse to save it." These are much such orders as should be given by trainers to their jockeys, when they are about to ride moderate runners or thorough-bred horses, or pretty good half-bred ones; as such a description of horses do sometimes meet, and, to make sport, they are engaged to run together, in a match, for a plate or stakes, at some one country meeting. But we shall shortly have to describe the very nice, and most advantageous manner for jockeys to ride

such horses as may be heavily engaged, or such of the young ones as the two or three years olds, that may have to come out to run for those valuable stakes at Newmarket, Epsom, and Doncaster, on which the betting makes it so well worth while to take the necessary pains to bring a horse out to run in his very best form.

It may not be out of place here to give the definition of a racing cock-tail. This term means, as applied to the horse, that the animal is not clean or thorough-bred, that is, he has some little stain in his pedigree, when traced so far back as the great-grandam or sire, or, perhaps, the great-great-grandam or sire: that is, one or the other of those, certainly not both, had some little flaw in its pedigree, but of so trifling a nature, that, if the cock-tail has good action, and is upon the whole well formed, more particularly over his chest, his wind, which is of the most material consequence, can be brought to the greatest perfection, so that the difference between him and the thorough-bred horse scarcely at times amounts to a distinction, as the former in running will occasionally beat the latter. Indeed, the main object of attending to the breeding of this description of horse is principally to qualify him to enter and run with other half-bred horses, and which he is certainly entitled to do, unless the drawing up of the articles for a hunter s plate or stakes should be so worded, as to shut such a horse out of the race. And, although, a cock-tail horse, in

the common acceptation of the word, is not thorough-bred, yet he is so near to being so, as to be able to beat any casually half-bred horse; which latter is generally understood to be a horse tolerably well; or, indeed, he may perhaps be very near thorough-bred. But then, this horse is bred so, more by chance than by any premeditated design of the breeder to breed such a horse for any other purpose than that of making him a hunter: and if the owner finds that the horse he has bred has pretty good speed, he may perhaps enter him to run for a hunter's stakes, in the neighbourhood where such a horse may have been hunted, and he is thereby qualified to start in a race with other horses that are much on a par with himself. But, to allow a good cock-tail horse to be entered into such a race as this, would be bad judgment, unless he was heavily weighted: for he is, in every respect, so very closely connected with that of the thorough-bred race horse, that he would most likely, not only beat nearly all the half-bred horses he may be running with, but he may occasionally beat some very fair thorough-bred ones, with which he may have to run.

CHAPTER III.

THE NECESSARY KNOWLEDGE TO BE ACQUIRED BY NOBLEMEN AND GENTLEMEN OF THE TURF.

THE nobleman or gentleman who keeps a large establishment of race horses is of course to be considered as the master of them: and if he intend to be paid handsomely the expenses incurred by his horses, he must be industrious, and make himself acquainted with all the practical circumstances belonging thereunto. The first of these circumstances is, he should be a good judge of the formation and action of a race horse, and, in the selection of those for his own stable, he should not lose sight of what is termed fashionable or running blood. Secondly, he should make himself acquainted with all the laws, rules, and regulations of the racing calendar. Unless he understands this book perfectly, and procures for himself a thorough knowledge of the running of the different horses recorded in it; and particularly the length of the courses they run over, and the weights they carried; as well also as any adjudged cases or items, that may be annually or occasionally changed; he will most likely not enter

his horses into their different engagements with that degree of advantageous accuracy he ought. Thirdly, he should turn his attention to that of being on good terms with the people of his stable, as the trainer, the jockey, the head lad, and the best riding boys, of whose sobriety he should be well assured, and that they are faithfully awake to his interest. Fourthly, he is to endeavour, as far as it is in his power, to ascertain how his horses are going on as to their bodily health while in their stables, and how sound they may be on their feet and legs when out of them; as well as also, how fit they may be with respect to the state of their condition, so as to be able to perform well what may be required of them, in their gallops, sweats, and trials; unless they are in a fit state to be tried, the owner will be deceived in them. Fifthly, he is to turn his attention most earnestly to the system of betting, and narrowly watch the movements and changes made in the betting market, as to how justly, from his own private opinion, his own horses or those of others may have been got up as favourites, or what others may have gone down in the odds, by being made outsiders. Of those matters the owner may form some idea from the private trials and public running of the horses in his own stable; that is, if the people of his stable know well what they are about, and that they are strictly honest to him; he can also judge a little from the public running of other horses in such races as his own horses have been engaged to run, where

they have, in getting near home, come to a pretty close finish on passing the winning-post. Sixthly, he must be careful how he backs his fancy, or takes the odds out of his own stable. As racing matters are so very differently managed now to what they were formerly, he cannot be too cautious how he places confidence in the opinion of others, which may be given him unasked; he should be very careful in acting on such information, at least in such of the great stakes as are made play or pay, as it is generally the case that stakes thus made make the betting P.P. Under the above circumstances, the old way of betting round is the safe game to play, by beginning early in all great stakes, as the Derby, the Oaks, the St. Leger, and many other similar ones, as some of those at Newmarket, and a few others at some of the meetings in the country. If a man has money to back himself on, let him begin early to lay the odds against all the horses in every great play or pay race, where the bets are P.P., as there is only one in each race that can win. To play this game, he must attend on such days as the betting market is open, and watch narrowly the fluctuations of it, keeping his own stable as secret and as much in reserve as may best suit his book, which latter he must often and well con over: he must watch and see if there is any favourable or unfavourable changes in the market, that may induce him to lay on, or hedge off, just as he may conceive is necessary to bring him-

self safe and well home; he is to look cautiously at these matters, and in due time, as a week before the running of each race, he should compare his book with those of others with whom he may have betted, who of course are such men as are capable of paying their losings, for lose they all must, by taking the long odds in those great races, upon every horse except one in each race. If a man has entered a couple of good colts in any one of the above stakes, and has proved such two colts to be superior to any colt he had ever previously tried out of his own stable, and that they have neither of them fallen amiss, either constitutionally or from accident,—and that he has been able to keep these two colts in the dark, until just before the time of their coming to post—if the owner of such two colts be a man of long practical experience in racing matters, he will have a right to expect to win one or other of the great stakes mentioned, (let us say, for example, it is the Derby, for which stake the getting a couple of colts ready to run will be described in a future chapter). We will, therefore, consider the owner to be a good judge, and capable of betting his money, with as much advantage as a betting man; by his being capable of doing this, he saves the expense of employing a commission better, and by his not employing this man he keeps the secrets of what his colts can do more to himself, until the race is over. Now, under these circumstances, the odds would be likely to be high against

the two colts in question near the time of their coming to the post—by the owner taking such odds as may suit him, and afterwards hedging the little he would lose in case of anything unforeseen happening, he will have made all safe; but, if either of the colts should win the Derby, the owner will, in casting up his book, previous to his paying and receiving, find he has a strong useful stake in his favour, as well as in favour of the stable. It is very well known, that the word "stable" is applied to a building erected for the purpose of keeping horses in; but, in the present instance, as that of a balance being in favour of the stable, it alludes principally to the people who are in the secret of what the horses in a racing stable can do, (which, of course, the master ought to be in every department of it), as the private training groom, the private jockey, the head lad, and perhaps one or two of the best riding boys; should these people have kept faithfully and honestly the secrets of what their master's horses may be equal to doing, their master should liberally reward them for their integrity, by letting them stand their money to a certain extent in his own book: and further, if a master finds, in the settling of his book, that he has won a good stake, as from five to ten or fifteen thousand pounds, and that he is fully aware that his good success has been occasioned as much, or perhaps more, by the good management and secrecy of his people than from his own good judgment, he should, in addition to al-

lowing his people to stand their money with him, give to each of them, according to the class of rank they may individually hold, a bonus for their honest fidelity towards him.

Those who keep racing establishments will find the above method much more beneficial to their interest, than to employ commission betters; men thus employed may act honestly in executing the commission given to them, whether it be to bet against your own bad horses, to pay the expense of keeping them, or whether it be to bet in favour of your own good ones, to win a large stake on them: still, however, a betting man having performed his commission in the market according to the orders he may have received from the owner of a stable of race horses, (who may not like to bet against his own horses himself), has it in his power, and can, if he chooses, from knowing the secrets either the one way or the other of such stables, commence doing what business for himself he thinks will be the most advantageous for his own book; and after having done this, he can also, if he chooses, furnish one or two of his particular friends with the information thus acquired, which they will well know how to turn to good account.

I would recommend all noblemen and gentlemen who are on the turf to endeavour to return to the good old fashioned way of doing the business of the stables and their horses, viz. by keeping their private training groom and jockey on their own premises.

Honesty is the best policy; and no doubt there are plenty of men in each of the above capacities still to be found that will do justice to their employers; and when such men can be had, confidence should be placed in them, that is, if they are found upon trial to be men of integrity they should be encouraged in the way I have already mentioned. It will not be found to answer the purpose of the owner of a stable of race horses to act towards his training groom and jockey as he might do to the domestic servants of his family; the latter, if they did not suit him, he might discharge, and hire others in their places, without any great inconvenience to his establishment. But for the owner to dismiss for a mere trifle either his trainer or jockey, both of whom, we are to suppose, are not only good judges of their art, but know well the constitutions and tempers of the horses, which they may have had for a long time under their care, (unless they should be found to be tricky), would be attended, for some time, in a variety of ways, with great inconvenience if not considerable losses of money.

Lastly, we further advise gentlemen of the turf not to be too fond of giving their own orders to their jockeys, as to how they wish them to ride their horses in their different engagements, unless they are very good judges. A gentleman having a horse going to run for a small stake, as a fifty pound plate, and choosing to give his own orders, on such an occasion as this, his making his own arrangements with his

jockey is not of much importance—the orders given by the owner may be proper enough, but by chance they may be wrong. In racing it will not do to trust much to chance; it is true, chance may give a lucky hit now and then; but where a horse is deeply engaged, as having to run in any of the great stakes we have mentioned, the most likely way to win the game in the end will be to trust to the cool, patient consideration and practical experienced knowledge of the trainer, who has had the feeding and the working of the horse that may be engaged to run, and knows what the lengths were, and at what pace the horse was capable of coming in those lengths; and he also knows what length of rally the horse could come at his best pace in the finishing certain parts of his work, near to the time of his running. From these circumstances the trainer best knows how the powers of the horse should be economized, agreeable to the state and length of the ground on which he is going to run, as well also as his taking into his consideration the sort of running that may be made by the party of horses in which the one we are alluding to may be engaged.

We shall now conclude this chapter, supposing that every nobleman and gentleman on the turf is perfectly acquainted with the matter we have here laid down; at all events we shall consider the owner of our racing establishment a good judge of what is going on in his stables, and this because we shall bye-and-bye want to make use of him.

CHAPTER IV.

PRACTICAL OBSERVATIONS WITH WHICH THE READER SHOULD MAKE HIMSELF THOROUGHLY ACQUAINTED, PREVIOUSLY TO HIS COMMENCING THE TRAINING OF HORSES TO RUN.

In speaking of the properties race horses should possess, and the state they should be in previous to their being put into training—The principal requisites to be noticed in the animal are, that he should have good blood, good speed, and good temper; if he is deficient in any one of the above very essential qualities, there is but little dependance to be placed on him, as a race horse, when running. It may be almost unnecessary to observe, that a race horse should not have, previous to his going into training, the least tendency to unsoundness, either local or constitutional, as that of any thing approaching to a chronic affection of the lungs, which may occasion even a trifling cough; nor must there be the slightest possible disease or enlargement of any of the tendons of the legs, or ligaments of the joints; and this more particularly holds good in the training of a gluttonous sort of horse. To bring such horse to post with any thing about him as above stated, would be throwing money away.

Let us next notice the state our horses should be in as to flesh. Speaking first of the young ones, either as yearlings or two year olds—if they have been paid proper attention to during the time of their being in their paddocks, they will, on leaving them, be sound, lusty, and healthy; and this is the state they should be in after being broke, previous to their going into training; and it is, also, this same state that all race horses, of all ages, and of all different constitutions, should be in, while out of training, or when they are put into training after their having been laid by for the winter; that is, they should have what is commonly called a "good bit of flesh" upon them; and we must be very careful how we remove the superfluous flesh from the surface of the bodies of all horses in training.

In training different horses, we are principally to be guided by their structure, age, and tempers, which regulate the strength of their mechanical powers, as to action, as well also as their constitutional ones; and just according as any one horse may vary from the other in those respects, so will each horse require a different sort of treatment. And, that all those matters, with regard to the training of horses, may be properly carried into effect, it will be necessary for us to explain sufficiently often the different causes and effects, that may arise from the various sorts of treatment we shall bye-and-bye have occasion to adopt in the training of every description of thorough-bred

horses. On my first entering the stables as exercise-boy, the system of training horses was not so attentively studied as at the present day. It was too much the custom with grooms to work too many horses together in one class, without their sufficiently discriminating as to how their ages and constitutions might vary, as well also as the lengths their horses were to come in their different races; consequently, some flighty delicate horses lost their tempers, and went off their feed; while others, by being kept too long in strong work, drew too fine, became stale, or, perhaps, got amiss on their legs. Another thing, training grooms of the old school were too much in the habit of letting horses of all descriptions go on with their work, until, as they considered, they were drawn sufficiently fine to come the length they had to run, not making due allowances that the length a horse may have to run might be short, and that the horse's wind, from the work he had been doing, may be good enough to enable him to go on in his race, and finish at his best pace, without his being worked to too great an excess, with a view to reduce him of his flesh.

This sort of treatment was too much adopted with gluttonous horses, that were mostly engaged, after a certain age, to run long lengths under high weights, as in country running. As such horses generally fed voraciously, it was often difficult to keep many of them from putting up a great deal of flesh; and as grooms usually considered that

those horses could not run, unless drawn very fine, it was, therefore, the custom with many of them, to work these horses according as they fed, concluding that the more work they could get into them, provided they kept feeding, the lighter they would be in flesh, and the stouter and longer they would be able to run. Those rules, in some few instances, certainly stand good up to the present day, as horses cannot run very long lengths if they are very fat, but more particularly if they are too fat in their insides, and which may be known by the difficulty of their breathing, after having been much exerted. But, if a horse is clear and well in his wind, he is not very likely to be too fat in his inside; and if he has done the necessary lengths in his gallops and sweats at the pace he ought to do them according to the length he has to run, I should not mind his being high in flesh, or appearing fat on the surface of his body, provided the length he had to run did not exceed a mile and a half; that is, if the horse we are now alluding to is not more than three years old. I believe there is no state or habit of body a horse can be in, that renders his constitution so susceptible of a dangerous disease, as that of his being very fat and full of juices; and as horses on their first coming into training are somewhat approaching to this state, the greatest care must be taken not to hurry them in their work, and more particularly young ones; for, as they run but short lengths, it is not necessary to

draw them fine. Neither should large long-striding horses be drawn too fine; such tall, large-framed horses should have a good bit of flesh kept on them, they will then bear, occasionally, a little brushing along, at intervals, in some portion of their exercise. It is at Newmarket that those long-striding horses are most in use, and the main object to be considered in the training of them here, is to bring them as stout as is necessary to come the short lengths in which they may be engaged to run, and at the same time to preserve their speed as much as possible. In the north of England, and also in country running, horses are engaged for longer lengths than at Newmarket, they are therefore trained to be brought stouter, according to their ages, and the lengths they have to come in their different races; and for this last-mentioned sort of running, I prefer horses shorter on their legs, and rather closer made than the horses are that run at Newmarket.

It is to be observed, that the exercising of race horses is one thing, and the doing of work with them is another. The former is to keep them steady and in health, and the latter, when properly administered, is to bring them clear in their wind, to lighten those that require it of their flesh, and to give tone and substance to the muscles of their bodies and tendons of their legs; such are the advantages of proper exercise and work for horses in training. Most of them will more or less draw fine in training, depending on the work they may be doing, and

this in the medium is what we want, provided that they are hearty, and that they go cheerful to their work, that their legs are cool and in shape, and that they feed and drink well. We mean by the above observations, that all horses in training should enjoy both their food and their work; if they are over-marked, as has already been observed, at either the one or the other, they will not come out to run in their best form.

By the word "form," as it regards the race horse, is meant that the animal has been brought by training into a fit state to perform or continue his best exertions, as they may be occasionally required of him, when he is running in company with other horses; and in this state he is able to continue those exertions with comparative ease to himself, and without endangering his constitution, that is, if he is not unfairly over-matched in any of his engagements, as by putting too much weight on him, and engaging him to run long lengths, to which he may not be equal.

Be it further known to the reader, that when a horse is engaged to run in a race of a certain length, as, for example, two or four miles, whichever of these lengths he may have to run, he must occasionally, and at a good telling pace, go a little longer length in the concluding of his work than he has to do in his race; and this when it takes place is called "getting the length he has to run into him;" and unless this part of his training is well arranged, the

horse cannot win his engagement, although he may be the best horse in the party in which he may have to run; and what is more, he may appear to the eye to be in very fine condition, and most likely he is so for the running of a short length, but certainly not for the running of a long one. The reader is therefore to bear in mind, that unless his horse is well trained, according to the length he has to run, however good he may be, he will not only be beat by the company he may be running in, but that company need not be of the most choice description to do so; in other words, he will often be beat by bad horses, unless he is in the care of an honest good training groom. Indeed, from any casual circumstance, as if a strong horse miss a sweat or two, and it should be near the time of his coming to post, it would most likely be the cause of his being beat in the race in which he may be engaged.

As to the appearance of a horse in condition, when brought to the post to run.—He should appear (if I may be allowed the expression) bloomingly ripe, fresh, and healthy in himself, clean and unloaded in his muscular surface from what is commonly called the "waste and spare;" in other words, there should be neither in him, nor on him, any superfluous flesh or adipose membrane (fat). He should be clear in his wind, kind and glossy in his skin, cool and clean on his legs, and, from behind the girths of his saddle, he should be straight and handsome

in his carcass (if he is not too great a glutton). The muscles of his body should feel hard and springy to the touch, with a sort of projecting swell or substance in the body part of them, and particularly those of his hind quarters, which should also appear as if they were distinctly divided from each other. His crest, not being too high, should feel firm and closely attached to his neck. This is the appearance, or state of condition, in which a horse should be when brought to post to run; and the orders to be given to the jockey, how such a horse is to be ridden in his race, must be according to the nature of the ground, and the state in which it may be at the time, as also the company the horse has to run in—and which orders, as we have already noticed, cannot be correctly given but by the training groom who has trained the horse, and who will point out to the jockey how the horse is to be most advantageously made use of, in coming over the sort of course he may have to run on, as also to the length of rally he can live in, in maintaining his best pace. And if the horse in question is a stout, game one, and kind in his temper, and has been as well taught as trained, he will, when called upon to come by his rider (who should be a thorough good one), or challenged by any horse in the company he may be running with, not only exert himself with all the elastic muscular force which he possesses, but will, as he is approaching near home, not only boldly face the crowd, but, by his continued exertions, will

dispute the conquest for every stride of ground, until he is pulled up past the winning-post. Now, if a horse appear at the post as we have just described him, he would then be in a fit state to run; but, with regard to the beauty of his appearance, as that of his being straight and handsome in his carcass, glossy in his skin, and gay and animated in himself, he may have all these last mentioned appearances about him, and yet he may not be in a fit state to run. He may be short of work, as we have already observed; he may not have done the necessary lengths in it at the pace he ought; or he may have been kept too long in strong work, and have become rather stale; or he may not have sufficiently recovered, perhaps, from an attack of the distemper; and from any of these causes he may be seven pounds or a stone below his proper form, and yet, to the eye of a common observer, he may be thought fit to run. I have met with men, who profess to be very knowing on the turf, rather too premature in making their remarks on the appearances of horses at the post; some men do not like bones, that is, they think some horses are drawn too fine; others do not like horses brought out too high, as having too much flesh on them. However, those remarks are mostly made by men who often know but little, or, perhaps, nothing of such matters; they are guided more by a theoretical sort of fancy than by good, practical judgment. In fact, there are no men who can, or at least, ought to be so capable of

judging of the fitness or state, in all respects, in which horses should be to race, as those who have had the working, the feeding, and the watering of them. A training-groom must never, therefore, be led astray about the condition of his horses by the opinion of others. Different horses will vary, more or less, in appearance from those we have just described; yet, notwithstanding horses may more or less differ from each other in those respects, as some of them being rather coarser in their carcasses, and having more flesh on them, still these horses may be in a fit state to run. In short, it will not do to train horses, as men would build houses, by fancy, or by rule; to adopt such modes of treatment would destroy them. As we have already noticed, their ages, their constitutions, and the lengths they have to run, must be separately and duly considered; and according as those circumstances may vary, so must each horse be differently treated.

The horses which are likely to be abused by too much work are the five and six year olds, of strong constitutions. Such of these as may have gone somewhat off their speed for the running of short lengths, are mostly engaged to run the longer ones, as those of two and four miles, for some of his Majesty's plates; and it sometimes happens, that such horses have no chance to win but by cutting out the work, that is, by going off from the start, and making as much running in the race as may be necessary to draw any of the young ones well out to

the top of their pace, so as to get them thoroughly beat before they come too near home; otherwise the latter would, on approaching the winning post, have enough left in them to make the last run, and go in and win. Now, to enable the old ones to make the running above described, it may be necessary to draw some of them rather fine, that their flesh may not fatigue them in running of long lengths. If the training-groom finds that his horses are not likely to suffer, either locally or constitutionally, from the work he may be giving them, and that they keep training on, that is, if he finds that his horses can go faster and stay longer at the pace by being drawn fine, the trainer will be right in stripping them of their superfluous flesh, still bearing in mind the circumstances which have already been noticed, viz. that his horses feed well, and go cheerfully to their work, that they are cool and clean on their legs, and sound on their feet. The hints here given as to the feeding and working of horses are all of great importance; if there be any deviation from any one of them, the animal's bodily health or soundness of his limbs will suffer more or less. By being forced on in length and pace at his work, contrary to the powers of his constitution, the horse will not only become stale in himself, and relaxed and large in his carcass, but stale and round on his legs, which would be likely to lead to the cracking and bleeding of his heels, which would be the cause of their suppurating. From bad management, a horse is

brought into the state I have here described, which renders him unfit to run; his work must, therefore, be stopped, and his engagement is not only done away with for the present, but another race may not, probably, be got out of him again for the whole season.

The grand criterion in training of horses, and the best of all others (at least I found it so) for a training groom constantly to bear in mind, is, that Nature will ever claim her rights, in regulating the whole economy of the animal system. This she will do in spite of all our efforts to oppose her. Hardy, gluttonous, strong horses are difficult to train, or rather it is difficult to keep them from putting up flesh, so as to prevent them from coming too fat to post; and training grooms have sometimes been led astray from the circumstance, that, if horses are fat in their insides, they cannot run on for any length; nor can any animal that is fat internally run its best pace but for a very short distance. Yet this rule does not in the same degree hold good as to the fat there may be on the surface of horses' bodies. If hardy horses in training do not draw fine on their external surface, from the work they may have been doing, they may, nevertheless, have got rid of a sufficient portion of the superfluous fat in their insides; and if I found them right in their wind, for the length they may have to come in their races, I should not mind their coming out high. Such horses had better come out

thus to run, than that they should be drawn fine for appearance sake at the risk of very much injuring their constitutions, and thereby disabling them from running in their best form, for the length in which they may be engaged

Another thing to be observed in the training of race horses is, that they should be got ready to run precisely to the day on which their engagements are to take place, as they will not remain in the artificial state of condition to which they may have been brought but for a very short time; and unless they run on the day for which they are prepared, they will change more or less, and but seldom for the better, except indeed they should not have been forward sufficiently early up to the time they ought to run. Now, such horses as are employed for purposes of pleasure, as saddle horses, if regularly fed and exercised, and in other respects properly looked after, will be healthy and kind in their skins, with a sufficient portion of flesh on them, and they are then considered by the pad groom to be in condition; and so they are, and in a very proper state for the purposes for which they are intended to be used. But even in those horses, if neglected in any of the little essential regularities in the management of them, as that of their being allowed to lie by only for a few days, a change in their appearance, from the healthy state described, will soon be observed. Indeed it is good training that will sometimes make bad ones win. Therefore

the observations we have made in this chapter are such as we particularly wish our readers to pay attention to; and that they may not lose sight of such observations, we shall in the following chapters, in the practical detail, when getting the horses ready, occasionally repeat some of the remarks noticed here, merely to prevent mistakes arising, as very trifling errors will throw race horses back in their condition, more than can well be imagined by those who have not been accustomed to the training of them. Now, before we conclude this chapter, we will notice some other little circumstances respecting the entering of young ones. Those matters are arranged in various ways——

In produce stakes, it is one of the regulations, immediately after the mares are stinted, to name, on the probability of their being in foal, that their produce shall run at two or three years old, in some of the best stakes; and if such produce be from untried mares, and got by untried stallions, the usual allowance of weight given in favour of such young ones, when they first come to post, is three, or sometimes five pounds; but should there be no produce, there is of course no forfeit. But there is no weight given in favour of produce that may be got by tried stallions out of tried mares. Breeders and owners have, therefore, to depend for the success of their young ones on the goodness of the stock from which they descend, as, agreeably to the regulations, the above produce cannot possibly be tried

previous to being entered. These are some of the arrangements laid down in the Racing Calendar, to which book we beg to refer the reader for further information on the entering of different produce.

In the entering of young ones, as yearlings and two year olds, into good stakes, whenever the first mentioned of them have to be tried, or have to run early, it is always in their own class; the weights they carry, and the lengths they run, are all laid down in the Racing Calendar; and the same thing stands good with regard to two year olds, when running in their own class. This, therefore, makes the matter simple enough in the entering of yearlings or two year olds. But should the latter be engaged to run with horses of all ages, the thing then becomes more complicated, on account of the varying of the weights and lengths. For the present we will defer explaining and simplifying the effects of those matters until we come to the entering of horses of all ages to run.

I must, however, here advert to some other little circumstances with regard to the entering of yearlings and two year olds.—If the owner or breeder of them is fully aware that his young ones are from good and tried stock, and has tried them to be very superior, has plenty of money to back himself on, and has his own private trainer and jockey, he should, agreeably to the articles or rules of the different meetings, in due time engage his colts or fillies deeply; for the greater number of good things

they are engaged in, the greater probability there will be of their paying their owner: but he must take care, in the entering of them, not to let their engagements follow so closely in succession as to cause them to be too much abused, or they will win but few races.

CHAPTER V.

FIRST CLASS OF HORSES AND MARES RETURNING FROM A SUMMER'S RUNNING TO THE HOME STABLES; THE ARRANGING OF THOSE HORSES AND MARES IN THEIR BOXES; AND THE TREATMENT OF THEM THEREIN DURING THE THREE WINTER MONTHS.

Most of our racing meetings are over by the end of September, the few which are run in October are concluded by the end of that month, with the occasional exception of the Newmarket meetings, and one or two others. The various number of plate horses, which have been engaged during the summer in running at the different meetings, as also in travelling from one meeting to the other, return in the autumn to their different home stables to winter. Some of them are taken for this purpose to the private stables of their owners, and others to the public training stables of the different trainers.

I will now, by way of example, and also with a view to bring the subject more clearly before my readers, lay down the treatment to be adopted, supposing the whole of the stables to be opened and occupied by any reasonable number of horses and mares, say twenty for example, of different ages and constitutions, and at the different periods as they

arrive home, let us say by the 1st of October. We will place them in such stables or loose houses as may be most proper for them; for it is to be understood, that all home racing establishments have or at least should have every conveniency for every description of horse. (See Vol. I. Chapter 1st, on Stables.) It is also to be understood, that the training groom who undertakes the charge of a large racing establishment, must be a downright good judge of his profession. For a description of each person's peculiar department in a race horse stable, I recommend to my readers a perusal of the following chapters in the first volume, viz. 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, and 21. According to the number of horses the trainer has under his care, he will engage such requisite assistance as may be wanted, so that his orders may be properly carried into effect—as a steady man, or a couple of very steady head lads, with a good set of riding boys: and whether a large establishment of this kind is to be carried on at Newmarket, or Epsom, or at any of the training establishments in the north, is of no consequence. Bye-and-bye I will point out the difference to be observed between the training of horses in the north, and the training them in the south. I will just here remark, that, when noblemen or gentlemen send their race horses to a public training stable, and do not send their own groom with them, it will of course be necessary to put the public trainer in possession of what information they can, with regard to either the good

or bad properties their horses may possess. It is true, the trainer will find out in time the good and bad qualities of all the horses he may be training; but if he is immediately apprized of any little unfavourable circumstance, he may take early precautionary measures, if not wholly to prevent, at least to diminish, any trifling defects a horse may have; as, for example, if a horse is tricky, the trainer may put up a good riding boy, who may in some measure be a check upon such a horse; and perhaps, if his tricks are not of long standing, they may be got the better of altogether. The racing properties of strange horses should be clearly pointed out to the trainer, what they beat, or what beat them; whether they gave or received weight according to their different years; and at what weights and lengths they can best come, and what was the state of the ground at the time. Of course, the different engagements of horses and the time of their coming to post, the weights and the horses they are to meet, are accurately noted in the Calendar. A trainer possessing the above information respecting the different horses in his stable, together with what he ascertains in training them, as also by his constant reference to the Calendar for a thorough knowledge of the rules or laws of the Jockey Club and for the public running of the various horses, will have a tolerable good idea of what chance (barring an accident) the horses he may have to bring to post have of winning.

Having now made my preparatory remarks relative

to the horses coming to the home stables to winter, let us now consider them as having arrived there, as they usually do at different periods, as the various meetings conclude up to the month of October. I will now, for example, place the above mentioned horses and mares in the different stables of a public training establishment, according to their respective ages, as young ones or old ones. It may not be out of place here to observe, that a race horse, like any other horse, is of age at five years old, as a man is at twenty-one; but if a race horse continues to run on until he is six or seven years old, he is usually considered in racing an aged horse, (although not eight years old), and he is therefore considered in the stables an old horse. As different horses arrive at the home stables, they are to be classed off in them according to the condition they may be in, and the running properties they may each possess. The first class to notice are the craving ones, which are mostly found to be running in the summer as plate horses; they are four, five, and six years old; they are of strong constitutions, and many of them have been much accustomed to strong work in their training: and in their running, they have often had to come heats of long lengths under high weights, as for example, in running for many of his Majesty's plates. Such horses, on their return to the home stables, are, many of them, drawn fine, in other words they are low in flesh; and most of them are stale in their constitutions, as also on their legs; and from so

often removing their shoes and plates their feet are occasionally in a bad state; and from want of proper attention during the hot weather, their backs are also a little sore. Many of those craving horses that return in autumn to the home stables, are in this state or approaching to it; such, whether horses or mares, if happy by themselves, should be put into large loose boxes, so that they may put up flesh, and recover the tone and strength of such parts as may have suffered from the repeated exertions they may have undergone in training and running. When horses have thus suffered from one or other or perhaps all of the above causes, they are not in a fit state, immediately on arriving at the home stables, to go out to exercise daily, throughout the winter, with the rest of the horses. It is the custom, and a very good one, from the 1st of October to the 1st of January, to winter the above horses in large loose boxes, or barn-like sort of stables; and if they are well managed in those places, they should be, by the time I have mentioned, in a fit state to go again into training, that is, they should be hearty, sound, and lusty.

Let us now make such remarks with regard to the attention necessary to be observed in regard to the loose box, in which a race horse has to stand, as will suffice for the arrangement of such loose boxes or stables generally. As to the size of them, they should be thirteen feet by twenty, (for the manner of ventilating it, see Vol. I. Chap. 3); the

box being thoroughly dry, it should be plentifully supplied with good clean wheat straw; and be it observed, that, as, when a horse lies down in his box to rest himself, he mostly does it in the centre of his bed, it should therefore be made of good substance in this part. But, as horses get fresh from rest and good feeding, there are at times some among them, who, to amuse themselves, get into little tricks and habits which are annoying to a trainer; they stand back close to the sides of the box, and here rub their tails and tops of their quarters, and they knock, and kick, and bruise their hocks and feet, by kicking against the boards or walls. With a view to prevent a horse as much as possible from practising those habits, every time his bed is set fair, the sides of the box should, as it were, be banked up wide and high all round with plenty of straw, so that the horse cannot so readily get back to rub or kick the sides of the box; and if a horse is inclined to paw, and knock his bed about with his fore-feet, the fetters can be put on him. The first thing in the morning a boy has to do who looks after a horse in a box, is, when he goes in, to chain up his horse's head, at such a length as to admit of his feeding; he then gives him his corn, and while the horse is eating it the boy is to set fair his horse's bed; in commencing this, he is first to look about on the surface of the bed, to see where the horse may have emptied himself; he is also to feel about under the straw

for the same purpose, and throw towards the door all the dung he can find; he is next to shake up the straw all over the box, leaving the greater part of it round the sides or walls; and any part of the straw in the centre appearing wet, from the horse having lately staled on it, should be removed; there should be nothing allowed to accumulate here in the way of dung; the box, in short, to use a common stable phrase, should be mucked out twice a week. But on all such occasions there must be, previous to the horse being dressed, a sufficient portion of the bedding put back to the centre of the box, to allow of the horse having good foot-hold for it to stand safely on while being dressed. The boy having done these little matters, and swept out the stable, after putting on his horse's dressing muzzle, and having securely shortened the rack-chain, strips off his horse's clothes, and gives him a good dressing. This done, the horse is re-clothed, and his saddle put on, and a hood may be thrown over his quarters, while the boy is rubbing his horse's legs for a short time; after this, he sets fair the bed, and again sweeps out the stable. This being done, as the horse is not now supposed to be in training, his head is let down to the length of the chain, and a bit of hay, by way of amusing him, may be put in his rack or manger; the stable-door is now locked up, and the horse is left ready (all but bridling) to go out with the other horses, either before or after breakfast, as the groom may

direct, or as weather may permit. The horse, having been out and done his exercise, returns to his box; here he is dressed and attended to in every respect as in the morning; having done his corn, his hay is given to him. The boy should now take the precaution to remove every sort of implement out of the box; having put them away, he returns again, and lets down his horse's head, leaving him perfectly loose; and in walking away from him he strips the hood off his quarters; he then goes out, and safely locks the stable-door, leaving his horse to enjoy himself until the next stable-hour, when he is watered, dressed, and fed as at noon-day, and at the same time the other horses are that stand in the stall stables.

Unless the horses in boxes, as well as those in stall stables, are properly attended to during the winter, it is not to be expected that they will be in a fit state to go into training early in the spring. These are my reasons for entering so minutely into the practical detailed account of how such horses should be attended to, while they are standing during the winter months in loose boxes, as have to go out daily to exercise at the same time with other horses standing in the stall stables.

There is a method of wintering a horse in a loose place, which is to be had recourse to with such gluttonous horses as may, as we have already noticed, from the repeated races in which they have been engaged, have met with more than common abuse;

such horses, on arriving in autumn at the home stables, require some little preparing before they are turned into the loose places it is intended they shall winter in, as they are most likely very stale in themselves, as well as on their legs; and if they should have plenty of flesh on them, but certainly not otherwise, it may be advisable to give them a couple or three doses of physic each to cool them. After the effects of the medicine are subsided, they should gradually be stripped of their standing clothes. Their feet, which are mostly in a bad state, should be examined and properly attended to once in three weeks, (See Vol. I. Chap. 22, on the Treatment of Feet and on Shoeing). Horses, such as above described, being thus prepared, should, with a collar on each of their heads, be turned loose into a clean, well-littered, and well-ventilated loose place; here they should each remain in what is called the rough, that is, there is no necessity for either dressing or exercising them; they generally take care to give themselves quite enough of the latter to keep them in health, either by their walking, trotting, or, not unfrequently, cantering round their loose places. Such of those horses as may have been running in summer until late in the autumn should be allowed to remain at rest until the month of March, before they are taken again into training, as it is hardly to be expected they can be brought out in their best form before the end of May or beginning of June. Now, the main object to be attended to in the ma-

nagement of horses in these situations is, to water them, to feed them, to set fair their beds at the accustomed stable-hours, and to pick out their feet once a day.

I should not have been thus minute in describing how horses ought to be treated in their loose places, but from the very negligent manner in which I have repeatedly seen them attended to in such situations, and this at no very distant period. As I have a pretty good reason to remember the careless treatment in the wintering of a horse in a loose place, I will, by way of example, here mention the sort of inattention I mean, as it happened to a horse I was at the time looking after when a boy.

The groom had ordered me to put my horse into a loose place, and here he was kept in the rough during the winter. I fed and watered him at the usual stable hours, and put clean straw into his stable occasionally. My horse, therefore, stood in his own litter, I think, for two or three months, until at last the stable became so insufferably hot, that, in the morning, when the door was opened, the fumes arising from the putrefaction of the accumulated manure issued forth as if from a boiler of hot water. The groom going with me on occasional mornings to look at the horse, I presumed that he observed what I have above stated, and at last he no doubt saw the impropriety of allowing the stable to remain any longer in so unhealthy a state, as he ordered that it should be immediately

cleaned out, and which I very well remember gave two or three of us boys a very long job. At the time the circumstance occurred to which I have been alluding, I was too young and thoughtless to trouble myself more about my horse's feet, either in a stall stable or loose place, than the trifling orders of the groom obliged me to do, so that I neither picked out nor washed my horse's feet, that I remember, during the time he had been standing as I have above described: the consequence of which was, his feet were in a very bad state.

But the cause of horses' feet getting thus out of order, when they have been kept in the rough in such loose places as may not have been sufficiently often cleaned out, should not at all times be attributed to any want of attention on the part of the groom: such things more principally arise from unforeseen circumstances; as, for example, a strong constitutional country plate horse, that may have been travelling from race to race during summer, and occasionally, perhaps, running three times a fortnight, such a horse's feet, on his arriving at the home stables late in the autumn, would be in rather a shattered state, from the circumstance of his shoes and plates having been so often removed, as to have occasioned the wall or crust of his feet to be much broken; in short, this used to be a very common occurrence. A horse arriving at home in the state we have here described, the training-groom considers, and very properly, that such a horse will not be in a fit state

to go again into training before the month of March; he is also aware, that this same horse cannot be so well got fresh by standing in a stall stable, as he can by being put into a loose place. The horse being properly prepared, by being gradually stripped, and having, if not too low in flesh, as I before noticed, a couple of doses of physic given him, the groom orders him to be put into a large loose place, or barn-like sort of stable. Now, with the exception of the horse's feet being broken away, there may be nothing more the matter with him, unless, indeed, his back, perhaps, from the changing of saddles, may have been bruised, and become sore; the irritability of such a sore would be kept up from the heat and friction of the clothing; but, by the horse being turned stripped into a loose place to rest, the causes which occasioned the back being sore are removed, and the parts injured recover of themselves; and of this most grooms are aware, as they are also aware that the horse's feet will be sufficiently grown, and that there will be plenty of horn to nail the shoes to in the spring. As regarded a horse's feet, this was all a groom ever troubled himself about; nor do I believe that smiths, in my juvenile days, knew any thing more of the nature and component parts of horses' feet than grooms themselves; for, in their cleaning out horses' feet, they cut away the horn, very injudiciously, from all descriptions of feet, without even duly discriminating, so as to leave the horn of a weak, delicate

foot untouched, or to remove a sufficient portion of it from a very strong one, with a view to aid to a certain degree, the elasticity that may be required in the latter. Neither were smiths, at the time I have been alluding to, too careful in the forging, fitting, or nailing on of horses' shoes. Indeed, such things as regard the treatment of horses' feet, and the shoeing of them, can be known well only by such men as have become familiar with horses, from their being brought up with them very early in life, and having, in due time, qualified themselves by attentive study at the Veterinary College, where they have had the opportunity, as well as the inclination, industriously to employ themselves in practising in the right sort of school, so as to obtain a good ground-work, or thorough knowledge, on the subject of all such matters as concern not only the treatment of horses' feet and shoeing, but also the treatment of the various diseases to which horses are subject, either local or constitutional. But to return to the groom.

Now, it is not to be expected that this man can possibly be well acquainted with all the minute practical matters we have been making mention of. In truth, a training-groom's attention is principally absorbed in considering the constitutional health of the horse; the object the groom is looking forward to, is to have the horse hearty, with a sufficient portion of flesh on him, and cool and clean on his legs, by the time he is wanted to be again taken

into training in the spring; the groom, perhaps, never once thinking, that, as the horse's frogs were sound when he was put into the loose place, it would be needful to pay any further attention to his feet until the time arrived for his being shod, when, on examining the horse's feet, at the end of three months, it is mostly found that they are, from want of being repeatedly attended to, in a very diseased state, the frogs of them occasionally being so undermined, as to have little or no horny substance left, and the feet in all probability much contracted. These are generally the bad effects arising from horses' feet being neglected, at the time of their standing in the rough in such loose places as are not sufficiently often cleaned out, and which may in some instances be the case even up to the present day. Let us, by way of example, suppose, that two or three craving horses have returned from their summer's running to the home stable of a racing establishment, and that those horses, to put up flesh and get fresh, are put to stand, for the period already mentioned, in loose stables, either in their clothes and regularly dressed, or stripped, and kept in the rough, whichever may be thought, according to circumstances, to be the most advantageous. The last-mentioned way of keeping those craving horses that may have been more abused than others, is to be preferred, to their going out every day to exercise, and returning to stand in the small usual-sized loose boxes. These stale horses

will benefit more by standing constantly, for three or four months, in large barn-like sort of stables, than in the loose boxes, as the coldness of the air in such situations braces up their muscular system, if they are not inclined to give themselves, in ranging about, too much exercise in such places.

Let us now make a few remarks regarding another sort of treatment of such horses as may have to winter in loose places. It was formerly the custom with training grooms, and it may most likely be practised by many of them up to the present time, to give their horses, on their having done their running in the autumn, three doses of physic each, with an interval of a week or eight days between each dose; this was formerly a standing rule with those men, without their duly considering the state of each horse's condition; and again three doses more were given to them, either about the end of February or beginning of March, depending on the time such horses might have to come to post in the spring. This method of indiscriminately physicing horses ought to a certain extent to be done away with. Yet, I am fully aware that race horses, generally speaking, cannot be brought to post in their best form, without having physic administered to them as occasion may require. But such artificial means may be dispensed with almost altogether, particularly in the autumn; for it is at this season of the year (the autumn) that many such horses as we are alluding to are drawn fine, (light of flesh);

and notwithstanding that they may be stale in themselves, and also on their legs, there will be no occasion to physic such horses to the extent we have alluded to. The few of them, such as may be gross and fleshy, with their heels perhaps a little cracked, may require a couple of doses of physic, on their being laid by; but only under such circumstances can physic be of any use. Stale horses are no sooner laid by in loose places, to eat, drink, sleep, and enjoy themselves, for three or perhaps four months, than from this sort of indulgence they soon put up flesh; and by the gentle exercise they take in those places, they soon get fresh in themselves, and cool and clean on their legs, without their having so much physic administered to them.

We will now lay down some few plain rules as to the manner of feeding the above horses, which are supposed to have been stripped and laid by in the rough, with an old collar on each of their heads. These horses are to be fed and watered at the usual stable hours; and from their having been living so long on the most nutritious dry food, as plenty of the best of corn, there may be some of them a good deal heated in their constitutions; therefore, to gradually cool them, and keep their bodies of a proper temperature, as also to prevent them from becoming too costive, we will at first give them some mixed food, which shall consist of three parts; —of oats, say a quartern; one double handful of bran; one of clean sliced carrots; and the other of

chaff, cut from the very best of hay only. This may be considered a large feed, but I know it to be a wholesome one. The portion of corn will be quite sufficient to nourish the horse's system, on his first being laid by; the bran will cool and keep the bowels in a good state; the carrots are sweet, nutritious, and easy of digestion, and race horses are very fond of them; the chaff is also nutritious, and causes the horse to masticate thoroughly the corn he eats. But if those sort of horses are plentifully fed on corn alone, on their first being laid by, it will be very likely to keep up that degree of heat and costiveness to which some of them are subject on their returning from a summer's running; therefore, let them take their usual quantity of hay, with the above-mentioned manger food, and they will eat less of their litter, and, from the succulent matter contained in the carrots, will be inclined to drink less water. Oil cake is very nutritious, we allow, and may be very well to fatten oxen upon, but the manger food, above recommended, we consider much more natural for horses. Should any one horse appear more costive than another, a mash of equal parts of scalled bran and oats may be given him once or twice a week, to keep his bowels in a good state. Those sort of horses, kept as we have here advised, will not only put up flesh, but they will be less subject to inflammatory attacks, either local or constitutional. Still, the progress of each horse's putting up flesh should be duly ob-

served; if a horse is found to get very quickly into a plethoric state, it may be advisable to bleed such horse, to the extent of four or five quarts, (depending on his age, size, and constitution), to prevent him from going wrong in any way; indeed, it was the custom among grooms (when I was a boy) to bleed their horses a fortnight or three weeks after they had been laid by, from extreme labour, to enjoy that of extreme indulgence. They bled those that put up flesh quickly, to prevent them from falling amiss; and those that did not thrive as readily as they could wish, they bled rather sparingly, with a view to improve their condition; and as the practice of bleeding horses on such occasions is a rational one, I would recommend its still being adhered to, whenever it may be considered necessary; the quantity of blood taken may be from three to five quarts, depending, as I have just observed, on the age, size, constitution, and condition of the horse.

With regard to the second class, the hearty horses, (the treatment of which is stated in the following chapter), those that are valuable good runners, feed well, and are content to be alone without ranging too much about, will do well in boxes, either dressed and clothed, and going daily to exercise, or stripped and kept in the rough, whichever the training-groom may consider they will benefit the most by. As these horses are not so gluttonously inclined as those which were first described, and are lighter in

their carcasses, they may have corn alone given them; and if at any time they become costive, or, indeed, to prevent their being so, they may have bran mashes given them, as occasion may require.

As these horses take less work in training, consequently, on their return to the home stables, in autumn, they will not require the artificial aid of physic, until they go again into training in the spring, unless they may have become stale in themselves and on their legs, by repeated running, and then a couple of doses to commence with will be sufficient, keeping a dose or two in reserve, until they have done a certain portion of their work.

We have now made such arrangements as we conceive necessary to be attended to, with respect to the first class of horses, whether they have to lie by in boxes, or to be daily exercised during the winter months, when they are out of training.

CHAPTER VI.

THE SECOND CLASS OF HORSES AND MARES RETURNING FROM A SUMMER'S RUNNING TO THE HOME STABLES; THE ARRANGING OF THOSE HORSES AND MARES IN SEPARATE STALL STABLES, AND THE TREATMENT OF THEM IN THE STABLES; AS ALSO WHEN THEY ARE OUT AT EXERCISE, DURING THE THREE WINTER MONTHS.

In the preceding chapter I described the necessary arrangements to be observed for three months, in the wintering of the craving or first class of horses in boxes or loose places. In this I shall have to make the arrangement for the same period, in wintering of the hearty or second class of horses and mares in the stalls of the home stables. This class consists of those horses, as I have before noticed, whose constitutional or physical powers are in the medium, and at three or four years old may have been found to have gone off their speed in the running of short lengths for any of the great stakes at Newmarket These horses, under those circumstances, are usually selected for what is called a campaign, or roving commission; in other words, they are got ready as early in the spring as may be

necessary; and they are sent off to run as plate horses, at the different meetings on the circuit, in which they have to travel during the summer; and, like the horses of the first class, they return in autumn to the home stables to winter.

These hearty horses are generally pretty good ones, if allowed to have their day, that is, not to come out to run too often. If they are brought fresh to post, they can most of them come tolerable good lengths under racing weights; and as there are many of them that do not require so very much work in training, and as they do not run so frequently as the first class of horses, they generally return fresher to the home stables in the autumn. These hearty horses or mares, not being gluttonously inclined, do very well in stall stables; indeed, many of them do better than in boxes, as they feed better in company than when alone; but I must observe that they are to be classed, the horses in one stable, and the mares in another, for reasons I shall bye-and-bye explain. But should there be a horse of this class a valuable good runner, that may have met with some little abuse, either from severity of contest or frequency of running, such horse or mare (if happy alone) would of course be much sooner refreshed by lying by two or three weeks in a box, then by standing in a stall all night and the greater part of the day.

The second class horses mostly run under lighter weights and at shorter lengths than the horses of

the first; those of them that are considered by their owners to be of sufficient racing celebrity, are entered to run for the lighter weighted King's plates or gold cups; and two or three of them now and then are kept in reserve, to be entered into some good stake or plate, with something handsome added. When neither of these good things is to be met with at a meeting at which such horses may arrive, they are frequently, to help pay expenses, if qualified, entered into any of the weight for age county or town plates. The lengths for any of the above mentioned plates or stakes, although they occasionally vary, do not often exceed two miles; nor is it an invariable rule at even these lengths to run heats.

As these hearty horses are not often engaged to run under high weights or long lengths at heats, they generally arrive, as I have already noticed, fresher at the home stables in autumn than the craving horses; and as they are more speedy than the last mentioned, they are (previous to being laid by) the horses from which one or two of the most superior runners among them are selected, to try any of the two year olds, or any horses that may have been longer at home, and which it may be thought necessary to try, to see what such horses may be entered into in the following spring; or perhaps to ascertain whether they may be worth keeping in training or not. But it is to be observed, that those horses of the second class, on their return

in the autumn, are not to be considered to be in a fit state immediately to try other horses, but should have ten days or a fortnight's rest, if necessary. When I say that these are to rest, it is not to be understood that they are to lie by and do nothing; I mean by the word "rest," that it is not necessary they should be in very strong work: their work should be such as will keep them sufficiently clear in their wind, and light and fresh enough in themselves, so as to come their best pace for a little longer length than the length of the trial-ground on which the two year olds or any other horses may have to be tried. The particulars of those and other trials will be found fully explained in their proper places.

The third class of horses, as they will have to winter with the second class, I shall only cursorily mention them here as being horses of delicate constitutions, as I shall speak more particularly of them when I come to notice the different sort of treatment to be adopted in the training of different horses.

We now come to the noticing of the arrangements necessary to be attended to in the treatment of the second and third class horses for three months. The days shortening as the autumn further advances, the hour for opening the stables in the morning gradually becomes later, as of course does the time for the going out of the horses in the morning to exercise. After the middle or twenty-fifth of September, the going out of the horses twice a day should be discontinued, and they should now only

go out once a day to exercise, unless indeed the weather should remain very fine and warm to the end of the month; they may, up to that time, walk out on the downs in the afternoon, to stretch their legs and empty themselves, and take their water and a slow gallop after. The doing those little things with them in the pure open air conduces to their health, and affords them some amusement, if the weather, as I have just observed, is really very fine. This method is to be preferred to their being watered and brushed over in the stables, unless indeed any of their coats have begun to move, and that they are getting what is commonly termed "pen-feathered;" for at this critical time horses are weak and faint, they sweat from little exertion, and are very susceptible of cold; and the sooner horses thus affected in autumn have done their running, the better for them and their owners.

The hours of opening and shutting up the stables during each day, as also the going out of the horses to and returning from exercise, cannot well be precisely defined. In the commencement of the month of October, if the mornings are fine and warm, the horses may be out as early as eight o'clock; but as the days are shortening, and the mornings get colder, the horses must go out on each succeeding morning later. The opening of the stables, during this month, should be at daylight; and the business of the day should be regulated by the training groom as follows: On his opening the stables, he

immediately calls up his boys; having dressed themselves, they turn up their bed-settles, take down the bales, and having cleaned out their horse's mangers, they immediately assemble at the corn-binn; the groom being here, gives each boy a feed of corn for his horse, which, after it is well sifted, is given to him. The whole of the horses having eaten their corn, and the stables being set fair, the boys put on their horses' dressing muzzles, and chain up their heads; the horses are then stripped of their standing clothes, these being thrown over the tops of the racks. The horses after being dressed are re-clothed in their exercise clothes, and their saddles put on; their legs being rubbed, the stables again set fair, and the bales put up, they are left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on; the stable-door being locked by the groom, he and his boys go to their breakfast. After this meal they immediately return to the stables; the bales being taken down, the horses' bridles and hoods being put on, the boys mount their horses; and as each boy knows the place his horse has in the string, and the distance he is to keep him from the horse in front of him, they are all in their turn ridden out of the stable into the yard, here to walk round until the saddles are settled to their backs, after which the yard-door is opened, and they now proceed in line, by the most private road, to the downs; and following them at a suitable distance, so as to see well what both boys and horses are about,

(for I have known the boys to be quite as tricky as the horses), must be the training groom on his hack.

For a moment I will just here observe, that, during the whole of the time the horses are out, the stable doors and windows are all to be left open, to admit the pure air, so that the stables may be cooled and well ventilated by the time the horses return ; indeed this matter of opening the doors and windows of the stables is to take place on all occasions when the horses are at exercise.

But to return to the string of horses we left going to the downs—I shall just here remark, that the reader is to bear in mind, that the horses above alluded to are of various ages, as country platers, and that they have all of them done their running by the end of September ; therefore, they are to be considered, now, in the month of October, as being out of training. I am aware that the meetings at Newmarket, and some few other places, are not concluded until the end of October, or, perhaps, sometimes not until the commencement of November. Indeed, to have yearlings and two year olds ready to come to post in Spring, the training of horses may be said to be going on all the year round at Newmarket ; I shall therefore treat bye-and-bye of training horses in November, as well as in all other months in which it may be necessary to train them.

Now, then, with regard to the exercising of the first and second class of horses, it is to be observed,

that the exercise for them, and, indeed, for all other race horses that may at any time be out of training, is to be such as will keep them in good health. No matter at what time of the year it is that horses are brought to post, our object must be, when they have done their running, to bring them, by degrees, from the artificial state in which they have so long been kept, to that which approaches nearer to their state of nature, and this is, of course, to be done by a relaxation of their strong work. Their exercise will, therefore, be principally that of walking; and when it may be occasionally required to gallop them, it is only with a view to steady those that, from indulgence, are getting too hearty, and this must necessarily be done; for, if a horse is allowed to get very hearty, he may daily follow up his gambols, until he becomes decidedly tricky, and more particularly so, should the boy, from being off his guard, get thrown off the horse; this sort of thing, from neglect, is not an uncommon occurrence.

As I shall shortly have to describe the different sorts of exercise for different sorts of horses, and the effects these exercises are likely to produce, under all the circumstances in which it may be required, it will, therefore, not be necessary for me to say more at present, than that, when the horses that are now supposed to be on the downs have done the principal part of their exercise for the morning, they may, during this month, (October), go to the troughs to water; after which, they may take a short gallop.

On their being pulled up, they are to be walked back to the stables.

Each boy having ridden his horse into his stall, and turned him round in it, they all of them dismount, and slack their horses' girths; they then take off their horses' hoods and bridles, and if the horses' tempers are such as will admit of it, each of the boys puts a handful of hay on the ground before his horse's head, for him to eat or pick at, while his head, neck, and fore-quarters are being dressed. These matters being done, the horses are turned round in their stalls; their collars and dressing muzzles being put on, and their heads chained up, the boys pick out and wash their horses' feet; and after giving their legs a few strokes down with some clean straw, they take off their saddles and body clothes, and dress their horses well; they then re-clothe them in their standing clothes, throwing a hood over their quarters, their manes and tails being combed out, their legs rubbed, and their beds set fair.

The exercise clothing and other things in the stable being put tidily away, as the horses are not now in training, their muzzles are taken off, and their heads let down to the length of the chain; their mangers being cleaned out, the whole of the boys immediately, as in the morning, assemble at the corn-binn, where each receives from the groom or head lad (for one or the other must invariably be present during the whole of every stable hour) a feed of corn for his horse: the whole of the horses having

got their corn, the boys go out. The groom is now to lock the stable door, so that the horses may be left at this stable hour to eat their first feed of corn undisturbed, during which time the boys may be cleaning up the stable yard. By the time the yard is done, the horses will, all of them, have finished their corn; when the groom again opens the stables, and the boys as before assemble at the corn-binn for a second feed of corn for the horses; which, when given, the groom and boys again go out, the stables are locked up, and the horses are left, as before, to eat their second feed undisturbed, during which time the boys may fill the water troughs and boiler. On the groom again opening the stables, the boys immediately betake themselves to the hay-binn, where each boy carefully selects his horse's hay, which being given and the bales put up, the horses' quarters are stripped; the boys and the groom now go out. The horses being done, the stables are again locked up, which, in this month (October), should take place at or as near to one o'clock in the day as circumstances will admit. The boys now proceed to their dinners; after having taken this meal, their time is generally their own, unless with those who may be looking after the horses in the boxes; those boys may have between stable hours to wash and slice a few carrots for their horses. If the stables are shut up, as I have just observed, at one in the day, they are opened again at four in the afternoon; but as this month approaches to its close, the days are short-

ening, so that the time for the horses' going out to be exercised in the mornings, of course, becomes gradually somewhat later, and towards the conclusion of the month the stables will not be shut up much before two o'clock in the day. Therefore, to equally divide the time for the horses to rest, the opening of the stables in the afternoon becomes proportionably later, that is, if by the end of the month, they are shut up at two in the day, they are to be opened again at five o'clock in the afternoon.

On the groom opening the stables in the afternoon a repetition of the same duties, as in the morning, takes place, that of taking down the bales and setting fair the horses' beds. This being done, each boy, with his bucket, repairs to the pump for water, and from hence to the boiler: the groom or head lad, here takes care that the water is mixed of a proper temperature: but unless the water is hard, it will not now require the chill being taken so much off as in the depth of winter. As the water is got ready, each boy takes up his bucket and proceeds to the stable, and waters his horse as directed by the groom; after which, the horses' muzzles are put on and their heads chained up, and the whole of them being stripped, their bodies are dressed, when they are again reclothed; their muzzles and collars being taken off, they turn round to have their heads dressed: which when done, they are turned round again in the stable, their collars put on, their manes and tails combed out, and they now stand with their heads

secure to the end of the chain, until their legs are rubbed and their beds set fair. Those little matters being done, and the mangers cleaned out, the boys now, as in the morning, proceed to the corn-binn, where they each receive from the groom, or head lad, the corn for their horses; which being given to them, the boys go out as before, the groom locks the stable door, and the horses are left to eat their corn undisturbed, while the boys are removing from the yard the manure swept out from the stables. The groom, having considered that the whole of the horses have eaten their corn, returns and opens the stables, and, as the horses are not now in training, he orders the boys to give them a small portion of hay, to eat or amuse themselves with; their heads being let down, and the bales put up, the stables are again shut at five o'clock in the evening, or, as the month approaches towards its end, it may be a little later. The horses are left to rest from this period until about eight o'clock, when the groom again opens the stables, and the operation of taking down the bales, chaining up the horses' heads, and setting the beds fair, is repeated. If the groom observes any horse having lain down, and perhaps, by rolling in his stall, to have displaced his clothing, he is to order such horse to be stripped, to be wiped over, and reclothed. The hoods being thrown on the quarters of all the horses in the stable, their manes and tails combed out, their legs for a short time rubbed, their beds set fair, their heads let down to reach the man-

ger, and the latter cleaned out, they are all fed, and the bales put up, when the stables are again to be locked. While the horses are feeding, the boys get their suppers; after which they return with the groom to the stables, when the horses have their hay given them and their heads let down, and their quarters stripped. The boys that sleep in the stable now let down their bed-settles, and go to bed; the groom having put out the lights, he goes out, and locks up the stable door for the night, which, in this month (October), generally takes place at about half past eight o'clock. In the month of November, the stables should be opened by the groom at six o'clock in the morning, but now, as at night, candles become necessary.

Before I proceed further, it may not be out of place here cursorily to observe, that, at the time of my juvenile days as exercise boy, it was the custom with training-grooms to go to their stables in winter as early as three or four o'clock in the morning; the boys being roused up, the horses were fed, stripped, and brushed over; the stables being again set fair, and the bales put up, the boys went to their beds; and the groom, having put up out the lights in the stable, left the door securely locked, and returned to his own bed, where he usually lay till day-light. Grooms went thus early to their stables, not only with a view more equally to divide the time of feeding the horses during the twenty-four hours, but also to occupy the time of the horses by giving them

something to do; as it was found that some thoroughbred horses, when lying by in winter short of work, will, by way of amusing themselves, get into as bad habits or tricks in the stables as some others of them will, from bad management, occasionally get tricky out of the stables. The tricks that they will at times get at in the night, in their loose boxes and stalls, are various; some horses get a habit of rolling, until they cast themselves; others are inclined to kick with violence the sides of the stalls; others lick the sides of the stalls or boxes; from this they go on to lick their manger rails, some lay hold of them, and thus take to crib-biting and sucking their wind; others of them will take to weaving, that is, moving their heads and fore-quarters from one side of the stall to the other; some take to pawing up their litter, but this is easily prevented by putting fetters on them. Now, that those habits and tricks are very bad we must allow; but I scarcely ever remember a horse, who had been addicted to any one of those or other tricks not here mentioned, to have been permanently cured. When they are in strong work, as in training, they do not appear to have so great a propensity to practise them as in winter, when many of them are lying by idle. Therefore, unless horses could be broken of their inconvenient and objectionable habits, by going thus early to the stables in winter mornings, I think it is a pity to disturb them at such unseasonable hours; for most of them that were not tricky were found lying

down resting themselves, which is the very thing they ought to do, until five or six o'clock in the morning; for, be it remembered, this is the season of the year that race horses are allowed to rest, and enjoy themselves. But if it should still be thought necessary to divide the time of feeding and dressing with a view to employ or amuse them, perhaps the better way would be, instead of shutting up the stables at eight o'clock at night, to shut them up at nine, and open them again in the morning at five, that is, should there be any horses in the stables disposed to such habits or tricks as have been noticed; for certain it is, horses will occasionally teach each other bad habits.

But to return from this digression to the month of November. In the commencement of this month, the mornings may be somewhat moderately warm and dry, and then the horses may be out as early as nine o'clock; but, as the month advances, the days get shorter, the mornings get colder, and the weather is becoming more uncertain, the winds are frequently high, and it is often wet over head; the time therefore of the horses going out in the morning progressively gets later, indeed the hour of their going to exercise in winter can hardly be said to be generally determined; but, when all favourable circumstances concur, ten o'clock in the morning is the most convenient hour for the horses to go out at this season of the year.

The clothing of the horses, either in or out of

the stables, should, at all times, be paid the strictest attention to, by increasing or diminishing their clothes, according as the temperature of the atmosphere may vary ; and, as the clothing of race horses differs materially from that of horses in common use, I shall make a few remarks on this subject.—The clothes the horses sleep in at night and stand in during the day are usually called their standing clothes ; these consist of the old check clothes, and such of the blanket-like sort of sheets, that, from use, have become too much soiled, and too thin to be put under the exercise clothes for the horses to go out in. The latter consist of the best sort of check clothes, under which are placed (sufficient in quantity) the most warm blanket-like sort of sheets (see the different descriptions of clothing, and their use, in Volume the 1st, Chapter the 9th).

When the horses are stripped in the morning of their standing clothes, they are thrown over the tops of the racks, until the horses are dressed, when the standing or exercise clothing is put on ; but which of the two will depend on the appearance of the day. Let us, by way of example, suppose that it rains when the stables are first opened ; the groom, being anxious not to miss a day of going out with his horses, regulates the duties of the stable as I have already noticed ; and while the boys are dressing the horses, he goes out into the yard to see if there is any likelihood of the morning clearing up ; if not, he returns to the stables, and when the horses are

dressed, he orders the boys to re-clothe them in their standing clothes; all the other before-mentioned duties being performed, a handful of hay may be given the horses, for them to pick at, or amuse themselves with. The groom locking up the stable, goes into his house to breakfast, and the boys into the hall to take theirs. The former, still being desirous to get the horses out, again goes out as before into the yard, to make his observations on the weather, which if not cleared up by eleven o'clock he orders the horses' water to be got ready. The head lad, with the boys, arrange this matter; but the former must take care to see that the water as ordered for each horse is sufficient in quantity, as also that the chill is sufficiently taken off. The horses having all had their water, are again stripped and well-dressed. As the stalls of race horses are roomy, and as the horses in dressing range about a great deal in them, they do, by those exertions, give to themselves a certain degree of exercise, which not only excites some warmth in them, but moderately circulates the blood and fluids of their bodies.

The horses being dressed, they are re-clothed in their standing clothes, and the hoods and rubbers are thrown over their quarters. Their legs are now to be well rubbed for at least twenty minutes, as they have most likely to stop in for the day. Friction to their legs for this period is highly essential; indeed, it may be considered as a local sort of exer-

cise to them. The feeding the horses, the setting fair their beds, and locking up the stables at the mid-day stable hours take place, allowing for any thing extra to be done, at the times I have already directed. The stable hours are the same as in the preceding month. If the stables are shut up at one o'clock, they are to be opened again at four; but if shut up at two o'clock, they are to be opened again at five, when the setting fair the stables, the watering and dressing the horses, and particularly the rubbing of their legs take place, as have already been noticed, and the stables are again locked up until eight o'clock. On their again being opened, the same process takes place at this hour at night as I have mentioned for the same stable hour in the preceding month, with, however, two exceptions,—the one is, it being a wet day, and the horses not having been out, the groom is to allow the boys more time to rub their horses' legs: the other is, as the horses have not had their usual exercise for the day, so as to increase the action of their bowels, and thereby promote their digestion, the groom should give each of them, the last thing at night, a luke-warm mash; this is a clean, cool, and relaxing sort of diet, and should be given on such occasions as I have here directed; indeed, this is a sort of food which should be had recourse to on winter nights, with craving horses that are out of training, as often as twice or three times a week, if the weather be such as to prevent them from

going to their regular daily exercise. The horses having had their hay given them, the boys that sleep in the stable, having previously had their suppers, now go to bed; and at about nine o'clock the groom should lock the stable door for the night.

Having made my observations on the arrangements relative to the treatment of the horses and the regularity of the stables, and on the horses stopping in on a wet day, I shall now proceed to state what are the requisites to be attended to, when the horses go to exercise on a dry day. The feeding the horses, and the duties of the stable will be the same as have already been noticed for the month of October; but now, as the weather gets colder, so in proportion must the clothing of the horses be increased, as well when they are standing in the stables, as when they have to go out to exercise. Indeed, so changeable is the climate of England, that this attention to clothing is not only necessary now in winter, but at all times and seasons of the year, and more particularly so in the spring: for it is, as I have before observed, at this season of the year that race horses are very subject to fall amiss in coughs and colds, or, what is much worse, to get severe attacks of the distemper, from which many of them are not only ill for the greater part of the spring, but, what is very common, their constitutions suffer so much afterwards, from the effects of the complaint, as to render them useless for the greater part of the racing season. This, therefore,

shews how necessary it is, not only for grooms to attend strictly to the clothing of their horses, but also, to prevent their horses from falling amiss, to be most particularly attentive to the ventilating of their stables, agreeably to the various changes of the atmosphere (see Vol. I. Chap. 3, on Ventilation). The morning being dry over-head, the horses are got ready to go out, being comfortably clothed; next their skins they should have their soft, warm blankets, which should be long enough to reach from the middle or near the top of the horse's neck, to the top of his tail, and they should be broad enough to lap well under his belly, for I have a great dislike to a race-horse's belly being wet; which would otherwise frequently happen, as the water will occasionally lie in the vales or hollows of some downs for a few days in winter, that is, if there has previously been much rain. My objection to a horse's belly being uncovered and exposed to wet in winter is, that the horse would naturally be cold and uncomfortable in this part, and would most likely catch cold from it; and when he returns to the stable, in dressing, his belly would have to be rubbed perfectly dry, and the rubbing of him here for any length of time, if he is an irritable horse to dress, annoys and puts him very much out of temper—even this last-mentioned circumstance alone is quite sufficient to sanction the covering the belly of the horse when at exercise in the winter. But, to return again to the clothing, in addition to the rugs,

quarter-pieces, and sheets, is to be added a sufficient portion of check clothing, as occasion may require. The saddles, bridles, and hoods being put on the horses, they are now ready to go out; but, in case of its being a very windy morning, it would be advisable to put on their breast sweaters to keep their other clothes snugly down in front, and, for the same purpose of keeping them down behind, their quarter-strings are of course to be put on, or, if the groom approves of it better, he may have some pieces of binding temporarily put on to the quarter-pieces, by way of cruppers.

The horses being properly clothed, the boys mount them, and ride them out of the stables into the yard; if, from bad weather the horses have been lying by for a day or two, it would be advisable to have them out earlier than usual. The first part of their exercise is, of course, that of walking, and which should at first invariably take place in the stable-yard. In summer, when horses are in strong work, it may not be necessary for them to walk here longer than until the saddles are settled to their backs, or until some of them have done setting up their backs. But, during winter, it is often necessary for them to walk in the yard for a considerable time, perhaps for an hour; for, should they, as I have just observed, been lying idle for a day or two, they would most of them have become very fresh and hearty, and were they in this state to be ridden out from the stables immediately on to the

downs, one or two of the most hearty would certainly begin their gambols, and which would set all the rest a-going at theirs; the consequence of this would be, that some of the bad riders would get thrown, from which I have occasionally known both boys and horses to be seriously injured. Therefore, to prevent such accidents from occurring, the horses should walk, shut up in the yard, for as long a time as the groom may think it necessary to steady them, and prevent their becoming tricky. Those precautions having been taken, the yard door is opened, and the horses are walked out; being followed by the groom on his back, they proceed to the downs to exercise. But, to make all as safe as we can, we will mention another little precaution that the groom may advantageously take when his horses are very hearty from having lain by:—the horses having been, as we have just described, walking in the yard for at least an hour, by which time they will have emptied themselves, stretched their legs, and have got somewhat off their calfish tricks, the groom should, before he lets the horses out of the yard, give his orders to the boy leading the gallop, by saying to him—"Mind, Frank, they are rather hearty this morning, (meaning the horses;) as soon as you see that all the horses have got as far on the turf as will give them good foot-hold, keep fast your own horse's head, and go right away up the long gallop, at a good steady even pace." The groom, in speaking to the rest of the

boys, says—"Mind, you all keep fast hold of your horses' heads, and, in following Frank, be sure you all keep well up in your places; do not let me see one of you loose, or lay out of your ground in any part of the gallop." This mode of galloping horses out of training is only to be had recourse to with a view to steadying them, which it mostly does; and, further, it is not of course intended to include, in this gallop, either yearlings or two year olds.

Generally speaking, the parts of the downs the groom should select for his horses to exercise on will depend on the uncertain or settled state of the weather; if the mornings are likely to be wet, the nearer to the stables the exercise ground can be the better, as in case of rain coming on suddenly, the horses' clothes would not be much wetted. If the wind is high, and the mornings cold, the warmest situations should be chosen for the horses to walk in, as the vales, or indeed any situations that may afford the most shelter.

Whatever exercise may be deemed necessary, the training groom is to give his orders according to the different effects he intends such exercise to produce on the horses he may have under his care, at this season of the year. But such other exercise as is necessary to invigorate the whole system of the horse, and bring the surface of his body into a proper state, as also to give strength and firmness to his muscles and tendons, we shall fully explain when we put the horses into training. All we wish

to say of exercise, on the present occasion, is to speak of the effects we wish to be produced on the horses, as regards their tempers and constitutions; which may now be pretty well understood, from the publications of the various authors that have written on this subject. It is exercise, when properly administered, that will create an appetite, promote digestion, and assist in converting the food into nourishment; and it also promotes all the secretions and excretions, and gives room for a fresh supply of food. In fact, unless horses are regularly exercised, or kept in situations where they can exercise themselves, they cannot possibly continue in health. Let us now return to the exercising of the different classes of horses we have just left out on the downs.

The first class to be noticed are those that feed voraciously, and when out of training put up flesh very fast; their exercise should therefore be such as will not only keep them in health, but will also keep them from getting into a plethoric state; although it is absolutely necessary that all race horses that are to go into training should be well fed and have plenty of flesh on them; yet those among them, that do not remain constantly in boxes, and that are gluttonously inclined, should in winter, when out of training, have such walking exercise and occasional long slow gallops as will keep them in a moderate state as to flesh. If the groom regulates these exercises as I have advised, he will not only

keep them healthy and right as to flesh, but he will obtain other very essential points, such as keeping his horses' legs cool and in shape, and their tendons will receive sufficient action to keep them strong and well braced and approaching rather near to what they are when in training. These are circumstances that should be strictly attended to, for it will not do to allow such horses as these to become from indulgence too much relaxed in their constitutional or mechanical system, and more particularly if they have to come to post early in the spring.

The second class of horses are those already noticed as being in the medium; by this I mean, that, although they feed very well, they do not, generally speaking, put up flesh to the extreme the first-mentioned class of horses do, but being, as many of them mostly are, very hearty, they are often inclined to gambol and play about when in the string, at walking exercise; and although they should be fresh and happy in themselves at this season of the year, yet they should not be allowed to repeat their gambols too often, or some of them will become tricky, and perhaps, as I have before noticed, throw the boys. Therefore, when walking exercise is not found sufficient to steady those of them that are so very playfully inclined, recourse must be had occasionally to giving them long steady gallops.

The third class of horses are the delicate and flighty —many of them become alarmed at the most trifling

causes; these the groom had better send to some quiet part of the downs, and there let them be exercised singly. The sort of exercise these horses require is principally that of walking. Now the groom must bear in mind, that, by this exercise, there are two points he is to endeavour to obtain in favour of these horses—one is, to steady them and give them confidence in themselves; the other, to give them an appetite for their food, as well as to induce them to drink. I confess it is difficult to get them to do either the one or the other; yet it is the only method likely to answer, at least the only one I am acquainted with.

Supposing the horses to have done their exercise, the whole of them are of course to return to the stables, where the business of the day is to go on, as has been already sufficiently described. One other little circumstance must be mentioned: the mornings at the season of the year we have been alluding to, will, of course, occasionally be wet, which will prevent the horses from being taken out to exercise at their accustomed hour. But, that no opportunity may be lost, should the day be likely to clear up by twelve o'clock, the boys ought to dine half an hour earlier than usual, so that the groom may, if the weather permit, be out with his horses at two or about three o'clock in the day, and give them the exercise now they should have had in the morning; and regulate the stables in the evening and at night accordingly. I have repeatedly spoken of the taking down and

putting up of the bales, as also the setting fair of the stables, which is to be understood by the reader as invariably to take place before and after the feeding and dressing of the horses; the bales, in particular, must not on any account be left down, unless it is during the time the groom and boys are in the stables.

During the month of December the same regulations and treatment are to be observed with respect to the boys and horses as we have already directed for the preceding month.

CHAPTER VII.

STRAW BEDS FOR THE HORSES TO EXERCISE UPON IN FROSTY AND SNOWY WEATHER, STATING UNDER WHAT CIRCUMSTANCES IT MAY OCCASIONALLY BE NECESSARY TO ALTER THE BETTING.

Now that the racing season is over, and the winter commenced, it becomes proper to describe the arrangements necessary to meet the inconveniences that may arise at this season of the year from the severity of the frost; as, in a large racing establishment, or neighbourhood, there are mostly some young ones, and occasionally a few old ones, that may have to come to post early in the spring. Indeed, the training of young ones may be said to be going on gradually the whole of the winter; and the old ones, that are early engaged, must also (if of strong constitutions) commence their physic in the beginning of January.

In this month, when the frost sets in, the horses are prevented from going out to exercise on the downs, consequently recourse must be had to exercise

them in rather a more artificial way. The arrangement for this purpose, for the want of a better, is generally made in the yard fronting the stables; such a yard is described in Vol. I, as 180 feet by 354, and which may answer for the forming of the straw beds tolerably well; indeed, I have often had to ride horses slowly in their sweats in more confined situations than the one I have there noticed. But it is my duty to state what I consider to be a sufficiently commodious place for the horses to be exercised in with safety, without considering the expense, rather than run the risk of having an accident happen to a valuable horse or two by being exercised in too contracted a space.

The sort of place we would recommend for the above purpose should be a long well-fenced paddock, adjacent to the stables, about 200 yards in length by 70 in breadth, with a wall round it six feet high, entered by a boarded gate, of the same height, by seven feet in breadth. The space to be taken up round the inside of the walls of the paddock, on which the beds of the long straw-like sort of dung is to be formed, should be five yards in breadth; and, if arranged agreeably to the annexed Plate, the corners being left well out, as laid down the in Plan, the turns at the top and bottom, or each end, of the paddock, will be safe and easy for the horses to make, if proper boys are put up to ride them at such times as they may be going to sweat here. It is to be observed, that, where there is a large establishment of horses,

there is also, if it is not too often removed, a sufficient portion of long dung always at hand for the making the sort of beds we want in the paddock, which is to be of the breadth, as just noticed, of five yards. This artificial surface is to be thick enough, not only to give the horses good foot-hold, but also to prevent any concussion taking place in their feet when they have to sweat here from the hardness of the ground. In case of a fall of snow, there is nothing more to be done than for the boys to brush the snow off the middle of the bed; and when the latter gets much worn from use, the edges of it may be brushed into the centre, and, if necessary, more long dung can be added. The bed may now be supposed to be properly arranged for the horses to commence their walking exercise upon, which they should daily continue for a few days, or until the dung, of which the bed is composed, has become, by use, short enough for the horses to go their sweats on; and which is to be preferred to their sweating here when the dung is fresh put on. The paddock I have here arranged will answer the purpose very well; and on the breaking up of the frost, it may be well manured, so that by the first of May there would be some fine spring grass. If the paddock were to be temporarily fenced off in the centre, and if, at a trifling expense, there were erected in one of the corners at each end a loose house, and at the other corners a small wooden trough for water, two good paddocks would be formed, in each of which might be turned out a mare and foal, or three or four weanlings, or a yearling,

or any horse that may be on the premises requiring to be refreshed.

Let us now proceed to describe the great advantage of our straw bed. We will first suppose, what is very commonly the case, that the frost has not yet set in, and that those horses which have to come out to run early in the spring, have been got through their physic by about the 26th of January. After they have had a few days' walking exercise, so as to recover from the effects of their medicine, they will begin to take such gallops as will sufficiently forward them to commence their first slow gentle sweats; and those that may have to sweat often may have got over two or three of them on the downs by the 10th or 15th of February, by which time we will say a frost sets in; this then obliges us to have immediate recourse to the straw bed in the paddock, for the time the frost may last. The horses on the present occasion have been got ready in the morning much as usual, the only little difference to be attended to is in the clothing and booting of them. With regard to the former, they must all be warmly and comfortably clothed for walking or galloping exercise: and the adding or diminishing of the quantity of their clothes on sweating days must depend, as has already been mentioned, on the ages and constitutions of each of them; for it is by exercise being properly administered, and particularly as regards sweating them, that they are kept right as to flesh during the severity of the frosty weather.

Let us suppose that our horses have been got ready in the morning, that is to say, have been fed and dressed, and their body clothes and saddles put on; the boys go out of the stables, the groom locks the door, and the horses are left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on. The groom and boys, having got their breakfasts, return, and again open the stables; the horses' bridles and hoods are now put on, the best riding boys mount them, and they are now ridden out to the paddock to be exercised. The exercise they are first to commence with is to be that of walking; this is not only for the purpose of their stretching their legs and emptying themselves, but to let them see the sort of place they are in, and to make them acquainted with the turns at the top and bottom of the paddock, as well also as to get the straw bed in rather a firm or settled state, before the horses go a faster pace on it. In frosty, as in windy weather, they are very apt to be playsome, and on any strange object suddenly catching their attention to be alarmed, and if one or two in front of the string start or fly out, the rest are almost certain to follow their example; but, as the best riding boys are to be put upon them, and the groom at all times is present, there is not much danger to be apprehended from those circumstances. On the first day the horses should be walked here until they are steady, and have become somewhat familiar with the place. After they have been a sufficient time at exercise, as for an hour or more, they may take

their water (with the chill well taken off), which the groom has previously ordered to be got ready in their buckets, and placed on the top of the troughs in the stable-yard. On their return to the paddock, after being watered, the boys should be ordered to keep fast hold of their heads, merely to collect them a little; and then, by pressing with their legs, or, if necessary, striking them with their heels, to move them on briskly for a few minutes in a *very, very* slow gallop, merely for the purpose of what is called "warming their water," or otherwise preventing them from becoming chilly after taking it, when they are to be pulled up into a walk, and continue at this sort of exercise until the groom orders them into the stable; where, after being fed and dressed, they are to remain for the day.

The horses having now become a little familiar with the paddock and straw bed, on the next and following days (if fine over head) they are to be exercised here during the frost, as they would be were they to go on the downs, only with this difference, that of making allowances for the confined situation in which they have to exercise in, and the sort of surface they have to go over, and then regulate the pace accordingly.

Whenever the day comes round for any of the horses to do their sweats here, they are to be set and got ready as usual on such occasions. On their coming into the paddock, they are to walk for a short time, the groom having given orders to the

boys to keep fast their horses' heads, so that they may be collected in their stride; the head lad on a hack should be in front of them, to rate them, not only at a very even pace, but at a very, very slow one: and the length of time it will take to sweat them here will not be for a longer period, or at least very trifling so, than if they were sweating very slowly on the downs; as it is well known by those who have made their observations on such matters, that horses will sweat more readily, either in clothes or out of them, in winter, in cold frosty weather, than they would do by the same exertion when the weather is more open, and feeling in some trifling degree warmer. This circumstance is said to be occasioned from the air in frosty weather, being a greater non-conductor of heat. The groom is to observe how his horses are going on, and be guided by the usual circumstances, as to the length of time it may be necessary for the horses to keep on at the gentle sweating pace mentioned; and which may be ascertained by his observing when the sweat begins to issue forth from the fore-quarters, passing on to the top of the fore-arm a little below the clothing; and the same observations are to be made on the hind-quarters, as at the top and inside of his thighs. On these appearances being present, the horses should be pulled up, and ridden into the stable, and here treated the same as if they had been sweated on the downs. And as regards their going out to take their sweating gallop, if they are well clothed, that

is, comfortably so, there is not that danger of their catching cold after sweating as grooms were formerly so very apprehensive of. They may then go into the paddock again and take a short gallop, and after their having been pulled up from it, let them walk round once or twice, so that they may not come into the stable too much heated, which may occasion some of them, as we have already noticed, to break out into a second sweat; they are now to be finished in all respects as usual, and to be allowed to remain in the stable for the day.

The different advantages derived from the use of a straw bed, in a paddock such as has been described, are, that the horses may do their exercise and sweats with some degree of safety during the continuance of a frost; and should it continue for a long period, as until about the middle of March, and perhaps no signs then of its immediately breaking up, under those circumstances may be given, to assist in lightening the bodies and cooling the legs of some of the strong gluttonous horses, a couple of doses of physic, which the groom may or ought to have kept in reserve, as we have elsewhere advised. If matters are arranged as we have directed, the horses will be kept from becoming too much loaded in their muscular system, and the tendons of their legs, from the exercise they have continually been taking, will retain their strength and tone. The only thing the horses will be deficient in, will be wind; but when the frost breaks, and

they have to go again on to the downs, this deficiency is soon remedied by the brushing gallops they will have to take to prepare them for their sweats here.

We have said, by way of example, that the frost sets in on the fifteenth of February, and we will suppose it breaks up on the tenth of March. Now, should the first spring meeting at Newmarket, or elsewhere, not commence, as is sometimes the case, until near the end of April, we shall have seven weeks for our horses to be on the downs at their usual exercise, after leaving their paddocks, which will give us as much time as will be necessary to bring the most idle of them in their best form to post. But, on the other hand, should the frost continue until towards the end of March, and the spring meeting not commence at Newmarket till the end of April, there would then be five weeks left, which would be an ample portion of time for the young ones to do what further work may be necessary for them before they come out to post. But if the spring meeting commences, as is sometimes the case, at the end of March, or early in April, there might not be time to get the first class horses sufficiently well ready to meet their engagements; this, fairly speaking, would alter the betting in the market, as most people who are engaged in turf matters know well enough that strong constitutioned horses coming out short of work to run, are not very likely to be winners; the second class, the hearty horses, re-

quiring less work than those of the first, the change in the betting would naturally be in favour of these, or perhaps of one or two of the best of the third class, that may have to come but short lengths in their races.

CHAPTER VIII.

INSTRUCTIONS TO BE GIVEN BY THE TRAINING GROOM TO HALF A DOZEN OF HIS LIGHTEST AND BEST RIDING BOYS, SUCH AS WILL HAVE TO RECEIVE HIS PRINCIPAL OR SECRET ORDERS, WHEN THEY ARE PUT UP TO RIDE HORSES OF A PARTICULAR DESCRIPTION.

Boys, as I have elsewhere observed, are most of them, more or less, tricky; and on no account should they ever be trusted with race horses by themselves, either in or out of the stables. I beg strongly to recommend these precautions being taken by my readers, yet not more strongly than my own early experience has warranted; for I confess that when a boy I have, when opportunities offered, been almost as mischievous as my companions in playing off very dangerous tricks with horses. The best course for the groom to adopt, is, to select for instruction from the number of boys he may have (perhaps fifteen or twenty) half a dozen of the lightest of them, that are the best conducted, best riders, and least inclined to talk. The course of discipline I would recommend is, by mild and

civil treatment, progressively to make them acquainted with their duty, so as at last to thoroughly understand such secret or scientific orders as he may have occasion to give them. It is true, that boys should be kept in the dark; but this is not at all times practicable, especially with those that are good riders, as these are often wanted to ride horses under particular circumstances.

A groom should take occasional opportunities of talking to those boys in whom he has often to place confidence, and endeavour to instil into their minds, how necessary it is for them to be secret with regard to what is going on in the training of the horses; and to point out to them the consequences that may arise from their being too communicative with boys of other stables, or indeed, any persons they may come in contact with in the neighbourhood in which they may live, and more particularly with strange persons whom they may meet when they are travelling with their horses on the road. He should talk to them on the subject of such orders as he is aware he shall now and then have to give them, and point out to them the causes and effects of such orders, especially as to how they are to ride some particular horses; and further, he should explain the consequences that may result from their deviating from the orders given them. He should occasionally, when talking to those boys in whom he will often have to place such confidence, mention the very essential parts that a good riding boy

should be well acquainted with; one of the first of those is, that of his being a good judge of pace, so as to be able to economize the powers of the horse agreeably to the state of his condition, with that of the state and length of the ground over which he may have to ride different horses, so as not to over-mark any of them, but rather to take care to have a little left in them to finish or come home with. It is the severity of the pace that horses go in long lengths that is the cause of their being over-marked, perhaps at a time when they may be a little too fat in their insides, from their having been kept too short of work. Now, it is on such occasions as the above, that the groom should caution his boys, and endeavour to make them acquainted with the different paces, as that of the slow-gallop which the horses take to set them on their legs, and which is had recourse to on hot summer evenings; and next, the pace termed "half speed;" then the pace termed "three parts speed."—"You must mind, boys, on no account, ever to increase or decrease from the orders I give you, as to how you are to rate your horses. To find out the different degrees of paces, you must all of you attend to Charles, (the head lad), when he is upon any horse leading a gallop or sweat for you, as you will always hear the orders I give him on those occasions; and I will take care he shall be up sufficiently often to rate you, till the clearest headed boy among you can distinguish one from another of each of the above-mentioned paces;

whichever of you can first discover this, I shall put up to lead the gallop of a class of horses himself; and if he is attentive and steady on horseback, I shall put him forward, and let him ride in public some of the light weights."

Again, the groom should point out to them the symptoms of distress that horses will shew in going along, should the pace they are going be too fast for them. In speaking to his confidential boys, he says, "If any one of you find that the horse you are riding, from not being in very good condition, cannot keep his place in the string, and should reach out his head as he is going along, as if he wanted more liberty of rein, it denotes he is tiring; you must instantly take a pull, and hold him together for a little way; never mind the other horses passing you; let the horse you ride that may be distressed come quietly on after them. On the other hand, if you act otherwise than I tell you, by persevering in the pace, your horse will soon shew further symptoms of distress; he will, to relieve himself, take a heavy sigh, and, in his doing so, you will find he will spread your knees out. You must mind, boys, never to persevere with the pace of any horse you are riding, either in his gallop or sweat, until he becomes so distressed as to cause him to give the sigh I have just mentioned; if it comes to this with him, he will require a much longer time to be held together to recover his wind, than he would have done in the first instance, when he

stretched out his head. Therefore, mind, always take a pull in time, and never let it come to the last-described symptom of distress with any horse. Nor must any of you, on any account, get up your ash plant, even to flourish it over your own head or that of a hearty horse; and this more particularly stands good in your riding of young ones, as yearlings or two year olds. The only instance in which you may, now and then, have occasion to raise your plant, is, when any of you may be riding a craving, idle, game sort of horse; such a horse will not only bear a blow patiently, but will answer to it by increasing his pace; and it is necessary that such an one should at times be roused in coming along with him, so as to make him keep his place in going on in his sweat, and more particularly when he comes to that part of the ground where he is to be made to further extend his stride, as when he is about to finish his last two or three sweats."

Such are the discourses, when opportunities offer, that grooms should have with their boys, so as to bring them not only to understand the orders given them, but to understand such orders in as few words as possible. For, by-and-bye, when he comes to the training of horses that have been some time in strong work, he will most likely have occasion to call out to some one boy or other, who may be riding rather an unruly horse, to tell him what he is to do, to enable him to manage his horse under any particular circumstance; as for example, a

horse may be making rather too free with himself in leading a gallop, and the groom may see it necessary to speak to the boy, to give him confidence, by calling out to him as he may be passing, "Sit well down, Tom, get your feet before you, and keep fast hold of your horse's head." To another boy, that may be on an idle horse, the groom may say, "Get at your horse's head, and twist him along, Frank." It will, therefore, be better to give names to the half dozen boys in question, which may be as follows—Francis, Samuel, James, Henry, Thomas, and William. We, when speaking to these boys, by way of briefness, will call them Frank, Sam, Jem, Harry, Tom, and Bill. The orders to be given to any of the other boys that may be but inferior riders, and not likely to improve, are merely to tell them to keep their places in the string, and follow the horses in front of them.

It may be considered by some of my readers, that I have been rather too minute on the subject of exercise boys; but, by others, as those who train horses, and have known the want of good riding boys, and are best capable of appreciating their value, my minuteness will, I hope, be readily excused. To prevent the groom from encountering any difficulty from a boy unexpectedly leaving him, the better way to obviate such an inconvenience, and hold the boys in some little check, would be to keep one or two spare ones on the premises, that know tolerably well what they are about.

Having spoken of how boys that have to ride race horses in their exercise are to be disciplined, so as to make them useful to their employers, we will now describe the sort of man we wish our jockey to be, and the necessary requisites he should be in possession of. His height should be five feet five, he should be proportionably well made, and very strong on horseback, have good nerve, good hands, with a cool, clear head; added to this, he should be bold, ready, active, and as quick of apprehension as occasion may require of him, so that he may know well when to take any momentary advantage that may offer in any race in which he may be riding; and he is, of course, to be a secret, sober, honest man, and an experienced good rider in riding both young ones and old ones, in trials as well as in races, under all the various circumstances in which they take place; in addition to these, he should know well how to win any race he is put up to ride in, that is, if he is on the best horse in the party; and he should do this without discovering the whole of the properties such a horse may possess. If our jockey can do these things snugly, it is all we will ask of him, as the best one among them can do no more.

I feel a little at a loss how to address the trainer and jockey. Mr. Holcroft, in his interesting Memoirs, observing upon the change of manners, says, that there were no *Misters* among training grooms and jockeys in his time; nor, indeed, were there in

my juvenile days, and I came several years after the above celebrated author. However, such, it appears, has since been the progress made in the march of intellect, that most of the above-mentioned persons at the present day are, I believe, when spoken of by their exercise boys, or spoken to by persons on business, who may be employed in bringing the necessary supplies to a racing establishment, addressed as Sirs. Indeed, so respectable a man as Mr. Robinson, late trainer at Newmarket, and many other trainers as well as jockeys that we could name, may fairly be entitled to those ceremonious distinctions of etiquette from such persons as those above-mentioned.

There has of late years been a further change in the style of addressing trainers and jockeys by the noblemen and gentlemen of the turf themselves: in speaking to the trainers and jockeys of their establishment, and in whom they repose a familiar sort of confidence, they address them by their surnames, instead of their Christian names; and, on some occasions, as that of sending a verbal message by an exercise-boy, they generally add the title of Misters. This change of manners, now infused among the above class of persons, adds to their respectability, and appears to us to be justly fair, at least, towards those among them who have proved themselves to be worthy of high trust; for in very high trust they certainly are, at least those of them who may have

to train and ride such race horses as may be deeply or heavily engaged; and as we shall consider our own private jockey to be a man of high integrity, we shall class him with those of the Misters, and call him Mister Day.

CHAPTER IX.

WALKING EXERCISE.

To lay down all the precise rules for exercising the different descriptions of horses, would occasion the extending of this work to a voluminous size, a thing of all others I very much wish to avoid. Yet I shall endeavour to lay down, in the most explicit manner I possibly can, the different sorts of exercise that should be adopted, according to the circumstances that are likely to occur in the training of a number of race horses, with reference to the effects such exercises may produce on horses of different tempers and constitutions. In this chapter I confine myself alone to the various uses or advantages to be derived from walking exercise being properly administered to horses, according as they may require it.

This exercise first commences in the morning in the stable-yard. The horses should all walk round here, as long as the groom considers it is requisite, which will depend on the season of the year, as also the state of condition the horses may be in. In

winter, should the weather be unfavourable, as frost, their principal exercise will daily be here; but in the summer they walk here only for the purpose of allowing the saddles to get settled to their backs, or rather until some of them may have done setting up their backs. But the time they may have to walk here in winter will depend on whether they are in strong work, as being in training; or whether, from indulgence, they may have become pretty hearty: if they are in the latter state, they will require a longer time to walk here, to steady them, before they are allowed to be walked out on to the downs: unless these precautions are taken, accidents will, as I have already observed, sometimes occur. If horses are in strong work, the walking exercise they have to take in the morning on the downs, previous to taking their gallops, need be but for a very short time; they may walk here in a large circle, merely for the purpose of allowing them to stretch their legs and empty themselves, during which time the groom is to give his orders to the boys, as to what classes each of their horses are to go into, prior to the whole of them going up their gallops. Their gallops being done, they may return to the usual walking ground, where they are to walk until they are perfectly cool and collected; they then proceed to the troughs to water, and then, after taking a short slow gallop, they are walked into the stable; this, generally speaking, is the usual or daily ar-

rangement of their walking exercise. But to what further extent this sort of exercise may occasionally be continued must depend on a variety of circumstances, such as the physical or mechanical powers of different horses. The walking exercise formerly given to horses gluttonously inclined was often carried to too great an extent, and more particularly after they had been sweating. For my own part, I am not partial to more of this sort of exercise than is absolutely necessary.

Walking exercise will be found requisite, first, to allow to all horses time for emptying themselves, to give flexibility to their muscular system, and keep fine their legs; and more particularly to those among them that may have to be often in strong work. Secondly, to assist in steadying those horses which may be too hearty, and full of their gambols. Thirdly, to give delicate flighty horses an appetite for their food, as well as to assist in steadying them.

To describe the precise time that may be required for horses when in training to be at walking exercise, to accomplish the purposes I have just mentioned, would be too tedious; suffice it, therefore, to say, that some horses may not require to be at this sort of exercise more than half an hour, some others an hour or an hour and a half; on some occasions two hours may be given to very delicate flighty horses, for the purpose of increasing their appetites and steadying them. Horses that are in strong

work, when kept too long at walking exercise, get careless and become stale and weary on their legs. There is no greater proof of this, than that when they are in the stables, and have been dressed and fed, the stables are no sooner shut up, than they immediately lay themselves down at full length, and thus they lie stretched out until the stables are again opened. Now, generally speaking, unless horses are over fatigued in their work, they have no natural propensity to lie down more than six or eight hours out of the four-and-twenty.

Whenever horses may be at walking exercise on a course, up between the rails, the groom is to bear in mind never to let them turn to come back, until they have passed the winning-post for the usual length at which the horses are pulled up after running, previous to their going home to the stables. This rule stands good when horses take their gallops on a course, and the same when they may have to sweat over one.

To conclude this subject, we will suppose a number of horses (say a dozen) to have had their physic, and to have been long enough at walking exercise, to have given sufficient strength and tone to the tendons of their legs, so as to allow them with safety to commence their gallops; the use and effects of which we will speak of in the next chapter.

CHAPTER X.

GALLOPING EXERCISE.

The gallops given to race horses in the morning, when they are in training, is to a certain extent for the purpose of improving their wind, and increasing the strength of their muscular and tendonous power. Yet this sort of exercise must be regulated, as to pace and length, just according as it may be found to affect different horses, as it produces very different effects on some to what it does on others. Horses, therefore, in an early state of their condition, should begin their gallops very gradually. Now, as the trainer will have to increase the pace and length of their gallops previous to the horses beginning their sweats, he will soon be able to judge how each horse is likely to become affected by this sort of exercise, as it is not at all an uncommon occurrence for gallops to produce much more severe effects on some horses than even long slow sweats would produce on others. It must, therefore, be ascertained what sort of exercise is best likely to suit each horse, or class of horses. The pace and length horses may go in their gallops may very well be regulated by their ages and

constitutions, and the state of their condition; yet these are not the whole of the criterions by which the groom is to form his judgment: he is attentively to look at and examine his horses when they are stripped and being dressed; and if he should observe any horse drawing suddenly fine (losing flesh), or if he perceives that any horse has become alarmed at this sort of exercise, the daily repetition of his gallops should be immediately discontinued, and a different manner of treating him adopted; walking exercise should be substituted for that of galloping, and should be continued until he has again put up flesh, and become reconciled in his temper. When that he is again put to go up a gallop, he should go by himself, for the length that suits him, or, if his disposition will allow of its being done, he may follow the horses, being last in the string, the groom ordering his boy to pull him up after he has gone perhaps half a mile. But even this short gallop is only to be taken occasionally, as it may suit the horse; and when he has taken it, he may be sent to walk by himself, or if it is thought he will be happy by following the other horses at walking exercise, he may do so; the method we shall take to bring him stout for the length he may have to run, we shall state in due time.

The gallops given mornings and evenings (but more particularly in the mornings) to horses in training, are principally for the following purposes:

—First, to teach them how to go up a gallop, and to bring them into a knowledge of their own stride. Secondly, by increasing the pace to improve their wind. Thirdly, to steady those that may be too hearty. Fourthly, to prevent those that are gluttonously inclined from putting up flesh too quickly from one sweating day to the other. These objects are to be effected by occasionally increasing the length of the galloping ground, (for the length of the different gallops, and the description of ground on which they should be chosen, see Vol. I. Chap. 10), as circumstances may require, or according as the ages and constitutions of different horses may vary.

The groom must bear in mind, that he is, on no account, to allow of his boys being out of his sight while they are riding the horses at any sort of exercise. Boys are tricky; at least, they were so when I was one, and if they are at any time allowed to take horses up their gallops alone, they will suddenly spring and spurt them along here and there; this not only makes young ones unsteady, but they get into the habit of striding too quick and hurrying themselves. Horses in training are not to be hurried in any part of their exercise or work; they are at all times to go a fair even pace, and when it does become necessary to increase the pace in the concluding of a gallop or sweat, it should be properly put into practice by the groom ordering it to be gradually increased from any one

point or object on the ground to that of another, and which I shall presently take an opportunity of mentioning. Among the boys of a racing establishment, there are invariably some of them that ride much better than others; and from among those that are light and ride the best, the groom should take care to select those to lead the gallop as have been accustomed to do this sort of thing. Indeed there should always be, at the time the horses are at exercise, an experienced riding boy (in whom the groom has confidence) placed in front of any class of horses, however small. From the repeated orders the groom is in the habit of giving to an intelligent boy who leads the gallop, as to how he is to rate the horse he is on, he will soon be brought to be a tolerable good judge of pace, and from custom, in the riding of different horses in their exercise, he will know pretty well at what rate any horse he has before ridden is going; and, according to the orders he may receive from the groom, he urges the horse on in the concluding of the gallop to as near the top of the horse's pace as he (the boy) may have been required to do, without drawing the horse quite out, in other words, extending him to the extent of his stride.

Another circumstance to be attended to is, that, among a number of horses in training, there are occasionally some much more difficult to ride than others. Such horses have sagacity enough to discover very quickly the sort of riders they have

on them; they will almost instantly take advantage of those that are bad ones, as they will also of small light boys that may be incapable of holding them, or of forcing them on at such times as it may be necessary for them to go at a breathing pace, as in the concluding of a certain length of their last two or three sweats, or in the last two or three gallops, they will have to take on the two or three last days previous to their coming out to run.

Whenever a groom intends giving any of his horses a good brushing gallop, as perhaps a day or two before sweating, or indeed more particularly at the time I have just mentioned, as when horses are about to finish their work before their races, the groom must bear in mind, that, generally speaking, those that are free goers are much more difficult to be held when going a good pace in company with others, than they would be in going a slow pace when alone; while others that are idle and lurchingly disposed will be quite as difficult to be made go at the pace required of them. Under the above-mentioned circumstances, the groom must change the light or bad riding boys for bigger ones of much more power and experience, who, when they are put up to ride, are well able, as soon as they have got the horses they are riding well off and settled in their stride, to take a pull and keep them together; those that may be on the class of free-goers, (for, as I have repeatedly observed, all horses that have to

go a good pace occasionally in their exercise must be classed according to what they are), as well as those that may be on the idle, lurching sort of horses, will, as soon as they have them settled in their stride, get determinedly at them, and not only keep them straight in their gallops as they are going along with them, but will also draw them well out, and continue them on to the end of the gallop at the pace the groom may have ordered them to go. Nor will the additional weight of the bigger boys be of any consequence, at least at the particular time to which I am now alluding, that is, the time the horses are about to finish their work before they come out to run; for, although at this period they have to go faster in their gallops, the length they have to go in them is somewhat shortened. In fact, it is always the best plan, when horses have to go a telling pace in any part of their exercise or work, if firm and well on their feet and legs, to put up boys of power to ride them, as they not only make them go straight, and keep them within their stride, but make them do, as to pace, what is necessary they should; and horses go better and more kindly with good riders upon them than when they are ridden by bad or inferior ones, as with those last-mentioned they are apt to take liberties. Unless, as occasion may require, grooms regulate the selection of their boys, as I have directed them to do in respect to the riding of different horses, some of them would get into bad tricks or habits, which it may

afterwards be difficult to get them out of. Those among them that may be idle, lurching horses would become cunning, they would, what is termed "shut up" with bad riders in their gallops and sweats; in other words, they would sulk, and not go in them at the pace they ought. Horses having got into tricks of this sort, it is not only difficult, but often next to impossible, for even a good and determined jockey to rouse them out of such habits at the time they may be running. If a jockey cannot succeed in getting a horse to give his race kindly, the horse will of course be beat. Other horses that pull a little and are rather determined goers, and that may sometimes require to be taken along at a tolerable good pace in their exercise, if on such occasions they are ridden by light boys, most of them will endeavour to get the advantage of such light weights; if the horses succeed in so doing, they will then go farther and faster than it was intended they should; from these circumstances they soon get to know their speed in their exercise—a sort of thing that should be avoided as much as possible; for, when a horse gets to know his speed in his exercise, it is but seldom he can afterwards be got to struggle well in a severe contested race.

We now come to make our remarks on the classing of horses in their exercise, the arranging of which will depend on a variety of circumstances. First, as to the different ages of the horses. Secondly, as to their physical powers, as regards

their stoutness. Thirdly, as to their mechanical powers, as regards their speed. And lastly, as to their tempers; but those that are very irritable cannot well go into any class; these will have to take singly, that is, alone, what little exercise may be required of them.

I have already observed that yearlings are invariably in their own class. Two year olds are to be in theirs; three year olds in theirs; and four year olds in theirs. Five year olds, six, and aged horses, may be in any class. Yet the reader must bear in mind, that some one or other of the horses we have just classed according to their ages, will occasionally have to be removed from their own class (the yearlings excepted) into that of a senior one, (taking care that the length of the gallop is not too far for the young ones); or a horse or two will have to be removed from a senior class into a junior; but this is merely to ascertain, in some degree, how good the best colt of a class of young ones may be: there is no great difficulty in observing which is the best colt or horse of any class; but it is necessary, if possible, to know in due time how much one colt may be better than others in the same class in which he is. This cannot be accurately known but by a private or public trial, or removing the best colt of a junior into a class of older ones, that are pretty well known; or by putting an older one into a junior class to lead the gallop for them. This brings us to the subject of one horse leading others in their exercise.

The horse that leads others in their gallops or sweats is, of course, the one that goes first in any string or class of horses; and when it is not intended that horses are to go a fast pace in their exercise, it is not of much consequence what horse leads them, provided he is a kind goer, that is to say, is not inclined in any way to be tricky. But when horses are in strong work, and have to go long lengths at a breathing pace in their gallops and sweats, that the training groom may not be deceived, and that the horse that leads others may not be abused or over-marked, it is necessary that he should be of superior powers, as to speed and stoutness, to those that have to follow him; or, if he is not, the thing may be managed by putting up on the horse a much lighter boy, but then you must take care that the boy is a tolerable good judge of the pace his horse is going. But, if a horse is very superior to the class he is leading, he should have a strong, good riding boy on him, that can rate him at such a fair and even pace as will not be likely to over-mark those that may have to follow him; and more particularly should the horse in question be leading others in their sweats.

It is also to be understood that a horse is not, on every occasion, to be put to lead other horses in their work, just because he is capable of doing so; if he is too often made use of in this way, he not only becomes stale and slow, but he soon gets below his proper form, and he will, unless he is very placid in his temper, want to be first in every thing,

which may not, under all circumstances, be exactly what is required of him ; in other words, he becomes difficult to be held when going in company with other horses, not only in his exercise, but what may be of more consequence, in his races ; and if he is difficult to be held in those, a jockey may not be able, when riding such a horse, to get him to run agreeably to the orders he (the jockey) may have received from the trainer. It is therefore not only advisable that a horse should not too often lead the gallop for others, but that such horse should be put into a string to follow others ; or if a horse cannot be got to do this sort of thing quietly, he should be allowed to go by himself in his gallops.

Further, with regard to selecting a horse to lead others in their work ; the training groom of a private establishment has the power of selecting any one he may best approve of ; but he must recollect that the horse that leads is in want of the same sort of treatment as those that are to follow him. The public training groom may sometimes have more difficulties to encounter in selecting a horse for this purpose than the private trainer ; as the former may be directed by some of his employers to work their horses by themselves, while others may leave the working of theirs entirely to his better judgment ; and as we shall here consider him to be an honest man, the latter arrangement is to be preferred. (See Vol. I. Chap. 21, on the Duties of the Public and Private Training Grooms, and on Jockeys).

We next come to make our remarks on the speed

or pace of horses. How much faster some can go than others, in their exercise or running, must depend on a variety of circumstances. First, on their physical powers, as to the strength of their constitutions. Secondly, on their mechanical ones, as to how they may be formed in the length, depth, and breadth of the different parts of their bodies and extremities. Thirdly, on their muscular strength, and on the state of perfection to which their whole muscular system may have been brought by their being well trained. Fourthly, and indeed almost principally, on the weight they may have to carry, and which must ever regulate the length of rally that different horses may be capable of continuing on at their best pace. Fifthly, as to how horses may vary in size; this last-mentioned circumstance very frequently regulates their manner of going as to stride.

We will first make some remarks as to how different horses go in their gallops according to their size and structure, and how each description of horse is generally found to vary in maintaining their best pace either in their exercise or running. A small-sized, close-made race horse is mostly what is termed a "round goer," that is, he is rather short, but quick in his stride; when drawn out to the top of his pace, to use a common expression, he is generally a sticker in a pretty long rally, and a good one in deep ground. A horse somewhat larger than the

one above-mentioned, as from fifteen hands one inch to fifteen two, if he has substance, and is well formed over the heart and loins, with a good straight back and a moderate length of body, and not too high upon his legs, and has good action, that is, can get his fore legs well out, and can bring his haunches well under him, is the sort of race horse I very much fancy for general purposes—he can mostly go on with the pace, and in good company too, for any racing length. The large sized horse, bred at the present day, is mostly from sixteen to seventeen hands high. Horses of the above size are generally engaged, at two and three years old, to run rather short lengths, for a few of the good things at Newmarket; and, as the season advances, they (principally the three-year olds) also run for other good things, at Epsom, Ascot Heath, Goodwood, York, and Doncaster. From those horses being so very over-sized, their length of stride is amazing; it is by their stride when running that they tell out almost all other horses that are lower in stature. These very large-sized horses can seldom come but certain lengths, as from three quarters of a mile to a mile and a half; which lengths generally suit them best; when these horses are called upon to come for the rally they can live in, in the finishing of their races, their speed is tremendous, if the ground is dry. But as such big horses are not always so well proportioned in their make as the smaller ones, they

cannot go so well through dirt, as in their stride they pitch their feet, when running, farther in the ground, if wet, than the close-made horse that is more of a round goer. Another thing is, those large, long-striding horses cannot continue for so long a length at their best pace as the last-mentioned close-made horse, as they cannot so readily collect themselves in their stride, by quickly bringing their haunches well under them. In noticing the action of a race horse, that may be a speedy good galloper, it will be seen that, generally speaking, when drawn out pretty well to the top of his pace, he can (without bending his knees too much) put his fore feet well out, and bring his haunches well under him, that is, his hind feet will mostly be seen to come nearly opposite, or quite in a parallel line with the outside of his fore ones.

The stride of different horses depends on their size, varying from eighteen to twenty, or even to two or three and twenty feet. But how long a horse will be able to continue on this last-mentioned length of stride, will depend on the weight he is carrying, as also on his formation, structure and muscular powers; and, as we have already noticed, he must have a moderate well-proportioned length of body and breadth of loins, together with lengthy, muscular, strong hind quarters, and well-formed back. Those unaccustomed to observe the stride of different horses, when going at the top of their pace, may not immediately see exactly to what extent they

bring their haunches under them. Should a person, under such circumstances, have a doubt as to the action of any horse, he had better, if a pretty good horseman, ride the horse himself; and, to be certain of drawing out the horse he rides, he should, if necessary, have another to go head and girth with him in finishing the gallop, for whatever length of rally it may be; and as the horse alluded to is pressed on to the top of his pace, he naturally, although fairly, pulls pretty strong at the rider, which occasions him to sit well down in his saddle, keeping good hold of its flaps with his knees, as well as a tolerably good hold of his stirrups with his feet, which, to give him power in holding the horse with his hands, he places rather more forward than is usual. The horse now being drawn out to nearly the top of his pace, it is just at this time the rider should, for a few strides, lean a little over to either side, and, by looking down on the ground, see how near the horse he is riding will bring his hind feet up or close to the outside of his fore ones. The rider is not to be astonished, if, in riding a number of horses in this way, he should occasionally find a horse bringing his hind feet a trifle beyond his fore ones. If the horse can do this sort of thing to the extent above-mentioned, he will be found to be a difficult horse to beat, and therefore a dangerous one to bet against, unless he gives away a great deal of weight to those horses that he may be running with. The manner above-mentioned of finding out a horse's

stride was practised in my juvenile days, and I have often had recourse to the same method myself. I allow it is an old fashioned way, nevertheless it will not be found to be a bad one; and I think it more certain than that of measuring a horse's stride on the ground he has gone over; as, to do this, the ground must be wet, with some degree of foot hold.

Having mentioned all that appears to be necessary on the subject of the action of race horses, the next thing to notice is the pace they have to go in their different sorts of exercise, and how, on various occasions, it is to be arranged. However slow the pace race horses may have to go in their gallops, they, from the manner in which they are taught to go in training, mostly put their fore legs better out, and their hind ones bettter under them, than horses in common use, and which gives them (as has already been noticed), a more settled and advantageous sort of stride; that is, they will be observed to stride or gallop along, instead of going the up and down cantering pace of hacks and chargers. The slow pace is mostly had recourse to, when the horses have done the stronger part of their work, as in the mornings after they have been watered. On a hot summer's evening, the orders given by the groom to the boy who leads the gallop, should be—"Tom, do not hurry them this evening, or we shall have some of them breaking out in a sweat." If the evening is cold, the groom's orders are to be re-

versed, by saying to the boy who leads—"Just go fast enough with them to keep them warm."

Having noticed the slowest pace horses have to go in their gallops, we will now rate them at a little faster pace, which is termed half speed; this pace is generally had recourse to by way of moderate exercise, that is to say, it does not come under the denomination of horses doing work. This pace is proper for horses on the morning following the day on which they may have sweated, that is, if the groom is of opinion that any of them have been a little over-marked in their sweats, perhaps from the horse that led the sweat breaking away with the boy, and coming too fast for some of the other horses; or it may be adopted when stronger gallops do not suit them so well as slow frequent sweats.

The next pace to notice is called "three parts speed." This pace horses have to go in finishing a certain length of their gallops, at the time the groom may be doing what is usually called a "bit of work" with them. This is also the pace horses go in their brushing gallops, which they take the morning before sweating; and it is also the pace they have to go in the finishing of a certain portion of the last two or three sweats they have to take just previous to their running. It is also the pace that some of the horses have occasionally to go in their sweating gallops; and it is this sort of pace a little increased that they have to go on the first,

second, or third day (according to their constitutions), previous to their coming out to run. But the different paces, and the lengths that different horses will have to go in them, under a variety of circumstances, will be more fully explained in the third Volume.

CHAPTER XI.

WIND.

If the lungs of horses are sound, their inspiration and expiration are equal, and forms what is called "their respiration," or breathing. Race horses that have large circular chests, formed by their ribs being well arched over their hearts, and that are moderately straight in their carcasses, have mostly good winds; indeed, it is principally from the circumstance of the chests of well-formed, thoroughbred horses having a more spacious capacity, that their wind is brought to the highest degree of excellence, or rather that it may soon be brought to great perfection by the management and exercise they have to undergo in training, which enables them to run on for long lengths with comparative ease to themselves.

To improve their wind, galloping or sweating exercise is to be had recourse to, whichever of these two may best suit the constitutions of different horses. But it is to be observed, that it is the first mentioned exercise with which we must first commence, and which is to take place as soon as the

horses have been sufficiently long at walking exercise to recover from the effects of their physic, which may be in about a week, depending upon how their physic may have operated on them. Now, when the horses first commence their gallops, it is with a view, in some degree, of improving their wind, so as to enable them to go through their first sweats. A groom having sent his horses for a few days up their gallops, is to begin to think about sweating some of them; but previous to his allowing them to undergo this exertion, he is to find out whether the horses he may intend to sweat are all sufficiently clear in their wind to admit of their going through it without becoming unusually distressed. To ascertain this fact, he must in due time speak to the boy who leads the gallop for the class of horses that are to be sweated, by saying to him, either in the stable or as the horses are going to the ground —"Bill, keep fast your horse's head this morning, and go along with them, and finish them at something near a breathing pace." To the other boys the groom says—"Mind you all keep your places; do not be losing or gaining ground in going along."

These orders being given, the groom on his hack is to cross over, or, if the gallop is straight, to go in time to that part of the ground on which the horses have to be pulled up; here he is to wait for the horses to arrive, and, on their being pulled up in front of him, he is narrowly to watch their breathing, and observe how soon any one or two of

them may blow their noses. Those that can do this in half a minute or a few seconds more (allowing for their structure), after they are pulled up, may be considered as being sufficiently clear in their wind to go through their first gentle sweat; others, that may not blow their noses for some time longer than the first period mentioned, should not be sweated on the following morning; the better way will be to allow the latter to go on for a few mornings more with their gallops at rather a better pace; and on some morning after these horses have been ordered to go at a tolerable fair pace up their gallops, the groom must, as before, be at the top of the gallop in time to see them pull up, and attentively observe what improvement they may have made. By this time their wind to a certain extent will no doubt have improved, which may be seen by their blowing their noses in a shorter time than when they were first examined with the other horses. If the groom has any doubt on his mind, as to the time horses may take in blowing their noses, for they will not all do this equally alike as to time, he may in a quiet way count them out; that is, immediately on the horses pulling up, the groom may begin to reckon to himself, dividing the time of each numbering, as near as he can, to the sixtieth part of a minute. If the horses blow their noses within the above-mentioned time, or in the counting of seventy, or at furthest eighty, they may sweat.

It is by the exertion which horses undergo in strong exercise, as in their gallops and sweats, that their wind is improved; but it is more particularly so by the latter, as by this their lungs are brought into strong action, not only from the pace they go in their sweats, but from the additional quantity of clothing which they have to stand under in the rubbing-house after they are pulled up, which not only causes them to sweat profusely, but forces them to blow hard. The great absorption produced throughout their whole system, by sweating, relieves them of their superfluous fat, and gives room for their lungs to expand: and from the increased action of the lungs being so long continued, they acquire a habit of quickly dilating and contracting them. From these circumstances the air-cells, if not actually enlarged, are improved and strengthened in their action to such an extent as to enable horses to go at a tolerable good pace for a considerable length (as, four miles, for example) with comparative ease to themselves; and when they are drawn out or called upon to go at nearly or perhaps quite the top of their pace, to finish the above length, they will be found to do so without feeling the least or very little distressed; or, if they are a little distressed on being pulled up, it is but for a short time, during which period they may be seen to blow hard, but free, clear, and strong, until they blow their noses.

Light, delicate horses, are generally in good wind,

or, if not, they require but little in the way of exercise to bring them to this state; to use the common expression of the stables, they will scarcely blow a candle out after being pulled up from a gallop. But hearty horses, and those of still stronger constitutions, if short of work, cannot be in good wind; and were such horses called upon to go for any thing like a length, at a breathing pace, they would soon be obliged to slacken; or, if from bad judgment they should be persevered with to go on, they would soon stop of themselves, when they would shew marked symptoms of distress; instead of blowing strong and clear, they would stand panting with extreme difficulty, and be a long time before they would sufficiently recover themselves to blow their noses; for horses, unless in the act of coughing, never breathe through their mouths.

When a horse has been pulled up from his gallop or sweat, and is heard to blow his nose, or snort with his nostrils, it is commonly supposed that the horse is sneezing; this we shall not dispute; but, in the language of the stable, it is termed "a horse blowing his nose," on being pulled up from either of the exercises we have mentioned; and it denotes that his lungs have recovered from the efforts they may have just undergone, to their usual or natural tranquil state of respiration; and the sooner a horse can blow his nose on being pulled up from a brushing gallop, or from having finished his sweat at a good

telling pace, the clearer and better he may be considered to be in his wind. Some horses, while in training, and that are getting forward in their condition, as they are going along in their exercise get into a habit of snorting, as they are expelling the air from their lungs; but this is not the snorting we above allude to, nor is it to be considered as any criterion for the reader to judge of the state of his horse's wind.

I shall mention another practice, for the purpose of expressing my disapprobation of it, which though perhaps of little or no importance, yet, as it was of no utility, ought long since to have been done away with. Exercise boys, in my time, were very apt, on the horses being pulled up from their gallops, and being, as is the custom, let stand for a short time to recover their wind before they walked away, to begin making a noise with their lips similar to that the horses made with their nostrils when they blowed their noses. As horses mostly follow the examples, tricks, or habits, of each other, the noise thus made by the boys probably often induced the horses to blow their noses quicker after they were pulled up than they naturally would have done had not such example been set them; for, I well remember, that, if we stopped a little longer than usual at the top of the gallop, the horses would keep on blowing their noses, as we kept on repeating the noise with our lips. Whether they did this sort of

thing from the example set them by the boys or not, I will not pretend to say; but, as there certainly can be no good derived from such noise being made by the boys, it should not be allowed to be done.

CHAPTER XII.

FEEDING HORSES IN TRAINING ON CORN.

Various are the different articles of food, either in a fluid or a solid state, by which the bodies of animals are supported. Among the different sorts, that which has been found the most nutritious and wholesome for horses that are kept in an artificial state (as race horses), appears to consist of hay, oats, and hulled split-beans. On the qualities of the various sorts of food, and the different effects they produce on different horses, see Vol. I. Chap. 4.

As the feeding of horses in training will require the most scrupulous attention on the part of a training groom, it may not be amiss here, previous to my speaking more at large on the subject, to give a plain statement of the course of the food, as well as also a brief sketch of the process of digestion. The food on being taken into the month is immediately conveyed by the tongue to the upper or back part; here it is acted upon by the teeth or molars, which grind it down, and by the fluids of the saliva glands, previous to its passing into the pharynx, down the œsophagus, or throat, into the stomach. Here, the

food undergoes a further change, in being acted upon by the gastric juice, which forms it into a pulpy solution; this solution, is propelled by the muscular contraction of the stomach into the intestines. Here, the food again undergoes a further change, by its being mixed with the bile and other fluids of the body; and, by a process wisely ordained by nature, the most nutritious parts of the food are now converted into a fluid called chyle. This chyle fluid is taken up by a system of absorbent vessels, called lacteals, and by those vessels it is conveyed into a tube called the thoracic duct, which conveys it along the spine to the left jugular vein, where it mixes with the blood. That part of the food which remains separated, is acted upon by the muscular powers of the intestines, and propelled forward to the rectum to be evacuated. By the chyle thus formed from the nutritious parts of the food, nature is recruited and refreshed, or, in other words, the waste of blood is supplied. I will just here remark, that this last-mentioned fluid is propelled through all parts of the body for the growth and support of animal life, and from which all secretions are supplied.

At a large public training establishment, it will scarcely be possible for a training groom himself to look minutely into every little individual circumstance relative to the training of a very considerable number of horses. If a groom has not more than ten or a dozen horses under his care, he may, by strict attention, and the assistance of a steady head

lad, and a sufficient number of good riding boys, get on well enough. But, if a training establishment should consist of more horses than above mentioned, as for example, from twenty to thirty, or perhaps even more, the business of so large an establishment must necessarily be divided; therefore, in proportion to the number of horses to be trained, so must the groom augment the number of persons he may want to assist him. He is himself to work and water the whole of the horses while they are in training; he is also to direct and arrange the different departments allotted to each of his assistants. Among them there should be a quiet, steady man, and experienced in the training of horses. This is the person who should be placed next in authority to the principal trainer, and to whom the feeding of the whole of the horses (if the number of them is to the extent I have mentioned) is to be intrusted. It occasionally happens that a horse will now and then go off his feed—a thing which, when it occurs, is of course immediately to be reported to the principal trainer; for, as at the time of their being out on the downs, he works and waters the horses, he may at once be able to account for such a circumstance. A flighty horse may go off his feed from the boy and horse not agreeing as they ought, while out at exercise, as, the boy may in some measure have been too severe with such horse, and alarmed him; or, a hearty horse may have gone off his feed from being rather over-marked in his work; or, a gluttonous

horse may, in his strong work, have been kept too short of water, which may have caused him to refuse his corn. No matter from what cause it arises, it is a circumstance that must be immediately attended to. The groom must quickly turn the thing over in his mind, and consider whether it may have taken place from any unintentional little mismanagement on his part in the working or watering of such horse, or, as I before observed, from the rash treatment of the boy who may have ridden a flighty one. If a horse should have gone off his feed from either of the above-mentioned causes, the groom must change his system of treatment, in the working and watering of his horses, for one of less severity, and which may be more suitable to the horse's constitution. If, on the other hand, the cause originates in the rash treatment of the boy who rode him, one of a more placid temper should supply his place. From whichsoever of the causes just mentioned, a horse goes off his feed, his work must be stopped, and the necessary steps are to be taken to bring him again to his usual manner of feeding; and of this, we shall have occasion to say more presently. But, should a horse go off his feed from indisposition, this would be of much more serious consequence than either of the first-mentioned circumstances; therefore, a minute inspection must immediately take place, so as accurately to ascertain with what disease he may have become affected; and which can only be judged of from the symptoms that may be present, as that of

an increased action of the horse's pulse and respiration, and the degree of temperature of his mouth, ears, and extremities: or if he has a difficulty in swallowing his water, and which may be generally known by his coughing immediately afterwards. Now, if a training groom is not well versed in the knowledge of those symptoms, or any other that may be present, as well also as the effects which may be likely to follow them, and the treatment to be immediately adopted for the relief and permanent cure of the horse, I should strongly recommend him to call in, with as little delay as possible, an experienced veterinary surgeon.

I confess, I have digressed a little from the immediate subject of feeding the horses; but I have done so with a view of giving a brief sketch of the course of the food, and making a few remarks on the process of digestion, and the causes likely to occasion horses to go off their food. I have been induced to make those remarks in due time, so as to prevent as much as possible, any inconvenience from arising, should any of them go off their food at the time of their being in strong work.

But to return to the feeding of them during the time of their being in training. Now, whether an establishment for the training of horses is on a small scale, and the horses are fed by the training groom himself, or whether the establishment be on a large scale, and the horses fed by an assistant, the greatest care must be taken in the feeding of every descrip-

tion of horse, agreeably to his constitution, and to add or diminish to each horse's feed of corn according as each may be inclined to feed. Horses that feed more voraciously than others, not only put up quicker, but they put up more, in proportion to their height, than those that are larger, and that feed and drink less sparingly. Such are the natural effects observed to take place as the size and structure of different horses may vary; and however much flesh any of them may put up, they must all be well fed. Most of the light flighty horses are but indifferent feeders; the principal object to be attended to in the feeding of these, is to feed them in small quantities, as a dishful (a double handful) at each feed, gradually increasing their different feeds, until it is ascertained what portion of corn they can be got to eat during the day, and to observe that, whatever portion of corn may be given in each feed, each horse eats up all that is given him. Any horse that may not have eaten the whole of his corn, should have that which he has left immediately taken away, and his hay given him. The means whereby the horse is again to be brought to his appetite, we shall bye-and-bye describe, when we are on the subject of doing a little bit of work with such horses.

The hearty horses are those that have often been noticed as being in the medium as regards their constitutions; these are moderate good feeders, will eat from a peck to a peck and a half of corn in the course of the day, and some few of them

will now and then exceed this quantity. Strong constitutioned, hearty-feeding horses will eat, by measure, in the course of the day, from a peck and a half to two pecks: and I have known some very gluttonous horses that would now and then exceed this quantity. Now, if we speak of the feeding by weight, and suppose the oats to weigh, which they should at least, forty pounds per bushel, the above horses would eat a stone and a half, or perhaps rather more, during the day. The very strong constitutioned horses are mostly inclined to eat a great quantity of corn, which, to a certain extent, is necessary, not only with a view to nourish and strengthen them, for they should be liberally fed, but with a view to prevent them, as much as possible, from eating too much hay, or, what is still worse, and which many of them will do, eat a great deal of their litter. Yet, notwithstanding this, these horses should not at all times be permitted voraciously to gorge themselves, by having their corn given to them in very large feeds. There are times when a little relaxation from such high feeding would not only be advisable, but beneficial; as, for example, on wet days, when the horses have to stop in; on such days, those that are gluttonously inclined should have each feed diminished a little, and, if not too near their time of coming out to run, they should have a good mash at night. Indeed, if they were to have, at each stable hour, as much corn as they could eat, most of them, from being

thus over-fed, would soon loathe their food, in the same manner as they would, from being over-worked, get sulky when at exercise; if these horses were kept long in strong work, merely because they are good feeders, they would become not only stale on their legs, but stale in themselves, and perhaps fall amiss constitutionally.

At the time of my early days in the stables, I have known all the above circumstances occasionally to have happened in the working and feeding of different horses. Nor have I any hesitation in acknowledging that such things have now and then occurred to myself at the time of my having horses to feed and work under my own directions; and this it is which has induced me to be so explicitly minute as to the precautionary measures I conceive are necessary to be strictly observed by those of my readers who may be engaged in the training of horses to run. I will here give a good old-fashioned maxim, and which should never be lost sight of in the feeding and working of race horses—that the horses should love both their food and their work; I mean by this, they should go cheerfully to both, for, as the one governs the other, if they are over-marked by either, they cannot come out in their best form to post.

Chaff being manger food, we will here make a remark or two upon its being given to race horses. It should be cut from the very best and sweetest of the hay, and may be advantageously given as we

have already advised, mixed with the corn, to all the horses in the winter that are out of training; but horses that are gluttonously inclined, and mostly idle in their wind, had better be well fed with corn alone, and afterwards have their hay in the usual way. To some of the light-carcassed hearty horses, it may be given occasionally; but for the light, flighty, delicate feeding horses, some sweet rich clover hay cut into chaff is preferable, on account of its very nutritious qualities, and may be given to them mixed with their corn at any time, as they are always in good wind. Chaff being thus mixed with their corn, causes them to grind it more perfectly.

CHAPTER XIII.

WATERING HORSES WHILE THEY ARE IN TRAINING.

The precaution to be generally observed in the watering of horses in training is, principally, to regulate properly the quantity of water they are to take at different intervals, which must be arranged by the groom, according to what he may be going to do with the horses.

We will first notice the watering of the light flighty horses. As these drink so very sparingly, they may at all times, unless immediately before they are coming out to run, not only be allowed to take what quantity of water they like, but they should, by attention, patience, and kindness, be encouraged to drink when they come up to the troughs. If they are not inclined to drink the whole of their water at one time, they should be allowed to sip it, until they are quite satisfied. Their heads are not to be pulled up so long as they are disposed to drink, with a view of making them take half their water at a time, as is necessary to do with some other horses that we shall presently have to water. Any

of the light horses that may not drink at the troughs should be offered water in the stables, when they are round in their stalls having their heads dressed; if they will not take it at this time, try them again immediately before they are fed; when, as the stables are less disturbed by the noise of the other horses, they will, sometimes drink, and they will feed better afterwards.

As the hearty horses (those in the medium as regards their constitutions) are mostly moderate drinkers, they may be allowed to take their water as they like, unless on the days before sweating, trying, or running. Now, with regard to the watering of the gluttonous craving horses, this is a subject that will require our most particular attention. The reader is to bear in mind, that the feeding of all horses in training, and watering of them, is invariably governed by the working, if a horse is over-worked, he will refuse his corn; if he is too much stinted of his water, he will also refuse his corn; and if he is over-fed, he will, of course, refuse his corn. In proportion to the quantity of food that craving horses consume in the course of the twenty-four hours, a greater or less quantity of the different fluids of their bodies will be exhausted in the process of digestion, and which of course produces a greater or less degree of thirst; besides this, these horses are much oftener sweating than any others. Such are the predisposing causes which occasion them to drink larger portions of water, at different intervals, than the lighter

horses that feed more sparingly and sweat less frequently.

As some few of the craving horses may be disposed to drink larger quantities of water than is absolutely necessary, either for the digesting of their food, or quenching of their thirst, that the groom may not be led astray in the watering of such horses at the troughs, or perhaps sometimes at ponds, he should in the commencement of training them measure the quantity of water that each may be disposed to drink when they are very thirsty. This is to be done by keeping the above horses for a certain time short of water; as, for example, instead of allowing them to drink almost as they like, let them take in the evening fifteen or twenty go-downs, (swallows of water). On the following morning, previous to the groom going out with his horses to exercise, he should speak to the head lad, and tell him that he wants to measure the quantity of water that two horses gluttonously inclined may be disposed to drink. The head lad, therefore, takes care to have a couple of buckets full of water, (with the chill well off), and puts them on the lid of one of the troughs in the yard at about the usual time he knows the horses will be coming to take their water, as when they have walked for a sufficient time to cool after their morning gallop. Now, when the two horses in question come into the yard to take their water out of the buckets, the groom, being by, says to each of the boys that are on the horses, "Mind that each of you be very particular

in speaking distinctly in counting out the number of go-downs each of your horses makes in emptying his bucket." Now, with regard to the common size of stable buckets, they are generally made to hold, when full to the brim, three gallons and a half; but they are rarely filled to this extent, as, for the convenience of the boys carrying them, they seldom contain more than three gallons. When, therefore, the number of go-downs a horse makes in emptying a bucket is ascertained by the groom, he may easily regulate the quantity to be taken at the troughs or a pond, by ordering the boys to allow the horses to take such a number of go-downs as is sufficient for them. The measuring of the water of gluttonous horses is highly necessary, for, as horses differ in size, so do most of them differ more or less as to the capacity of their swallows. Some horses, when thirsty, will drink three gallons of water in forty or forty-five go-downs, other horses in fifty, others in sixty. I have known some make eighty go-downs in emptying a bucket of three gallons; and, unless we know pretty nearly the quantity of water that those craving horses take in a certain number of swallows, we cannot bye-and-bye set them for their sweats, trials, and races, with that degree of nicety it will be requisite we should do.

As the gluttonous horses in training are mostly in strong work, they must occasionally be stinted of their water; yet this must be done judiciously; for, if they are allowed to drink large quantities of water,

their bowels will become too much relaxed, and, instead of their being moderately straight and handsome in their carcasses, they will become coarse and large in them. The best criterion for a training groom to go by is, in the early part of such horses' training, gradually to stint those that are inclined at one time to drink larger portions of water than may be proper for them, by letting them take a few go-downs less, morning and evening, until they begin to get a little off their feed, when the stinting of their water should be discontinued, and they should now be allowed to drink more liberally until they feed as they usually did. The groom is to bear in mind the number of go-downs of water that any horses may have taken less than they would have done at the time were they allowed to take what they chose out of the buckets, in order that, when there is again a necessity for stinting them, he may be better able to ascertain the quantity to be diminished. The groom, by the above arrangement in watering of gluttonous horses, cannot well be led astray in the stinting of them, at a time when he may be going to set them, as when he wishes to send them a good pace in their gallops, on the day before they may have to sweat, or for a certain period of time previous to their coming out to run.

The proper course to be adopted in watering the gluttonous horses, when they are not in strong work, as when they go out only once a day, as in spring, in the commencement of their training, is to water

them frequently in the course of the day, in the same manner as the delicate flighty horses are watered; only with this difference, that, whatever quantity is to be given the former at one time, they are to be made to drink it at twice, by pulling up their heads, and letting them wash their mouths, and then allowing them to take the remainder. By watering those horses in this way, they will become more satisfied with the portion of water that may be allowed them each day, than they would be were they permitted greedily to swallow their different quantities of water at one time, either out of the troughs in the yard, or out of the buckets in the stable.

In summer time, when the horses go out twice a day, those among them that are great drinkers, if the weather is very hot, should be indulged a little by allowing them to take a few go-downs of water more at each time, merely to prevent them from becoming so thirsty, as to take them off their usual way of feeding.

Now, a groom in ordering his horses to be watered in the evening should be regulated by their different constitutions, and the different sorts of work or exercise he intends them to do; on the following morning, therefore, he is to give his orders accordingly to each of his boys as they are riding their horses up to the troughs to be watered. Speaking to the first boy, who may be on a horse that is a moderate drinker, (one that takes from twenty-five to thirty go-downs of water, morning and evening), he says, "Let your

horse take twenty go-downs." To a second boy, "Let your horse take twenty-five go-downs, and let him take it at twice." To a third boy, "Let your horse (one that if allowed to do so would take from fifty to sixty go-downs of water) "take half his water and let him take it at twice;" and so on with any other horses, allowing them to take more or less water on all such occasions, according to the sort of drinkers they are, or the time in the morning, as before or after breakfast, that they may be going to perform any particular exertion.

Before I conclude this chapter, I will give a few precautionary hints on the subject of bad water. I have already spoken on the qualities of water, and on such as may be most proper for horses, as also the effects it has on their constitutions when hard, and the remedies to be adopted to soften it, so as to prevent as much as possible any injury arising to the health of race horses from a change of water, as when they are travelling from their home stables to others in a distant neighbourhood. (See Vol. I. Chap. 6.)

Grooms cannot be too particular in their inquiries as to the quality of water at different inns on the road, or at any of the stables which their horses may have to stand in near to the course it is intended they are to run over. Travelling and change of air will occasionally alter horses for the worse, notwithstanding every attention may be paid to them. But what will still make a much greater change in them

is, their having to drink bad water, such as hard pump-water, drawn perhaps from very deep wells. Horses, when in training, being accustomed to drink of the most soft pure water, the effects of bad water will be immediately evident; however well the chill may have been taken off such water, they soon begin to tremble and shake, and their coats are to be seen staring or standing on end; which is to be attributed rather to the effects of bad water on the constitutions of race horses when travelling, than to the change of either air, stables, or food. Such water as may have been found to agree best with horses, and which they may have been accustomed to take in the neighbourhood in which they have been trained, is of course the water to be depended on. And under very particular circumstances, as a horse being deeply engaged, or that has been so well tried as to induce the owner to think he might, barring an accident, win the Derby or Leger, water might be sent on from the home stable to the place where the horse may be engaged to run. But this cannot well be done on a general scale in consequence of the inconvenience and expense that would be incurred.

CHAPTER XIV.

TEACHING YEARLINGS.

In the last Chapter of my first Volume, I have described the manner in which colts or fillies are to be broken, either as yearlings or two-year olds, and I have there made my remarks on the early and temporary trials of yearlings made by breeders, for the purpose of ascertaining how to value their different colts and fillies, according to the good or bad qualities each may possess. For the same purpose some noblemen and gentlemen have also been induced to put their yearlings into regular training, that they may ascertain whether it will be worth the expense of keeping them on or not.

It will require eight or twelve months, from the time of the young ones leaving their paddocks, before they can be sufficiently well broken and trained, or what is usually termed "brought out ripe to post." But the reader is to bear in mind, that, of the two periods we have given for the getting of yearlings ready to run, the last is mostly to be preferred, as some colts require much longer time than others. It is further to be remarked, that the training of either yearlings or two year olds will not require twelve months, that is, it will not take so long a time

for the regular feeding, working, and watering of them, to bring them into the proper condition to run; but it will require fully that time in teaching them, before they can be said to be thoroughly well capable of doing whatever may afterwards be required of them as race horses, and for the trainer to perfect them in all those little matters, of which we shall make mention as we proceed, and to bring them out, as we have said, fully ripe to post.

Young ones, that come out to run thus early, should be thoroughly well broken, and by the first of November they should be in the training stables, under the care of the training groom: the colts in one stable and the fillies in another; and, by way of example, we will suppose there is a dozen of them to be trained. As yearlings can only run with yearlings, at least in my opinion they ought not, they are to be considered as being in their own class until they are two years old.

Now, by way of putting grooms on their guard, so that mistakes or accidents may not unexpectedly arise, it will be necessary to put those yearlings we are about to train into separate classes, and describe what are the probable habits or propensities, good or bad, of each class.

The first class to notice are those of strong constitutions; these colts are powerfully made: they are short in their backs, wide over their loins, are well arched in the anterior part of the ribs, and have large

carcasses; they are termed in the stables, the "craving ones, or gluttons." These colts, as they advance in age, become stout horses; they are long comers under high weights, and, not being very speedy, they are mostly used as country platers.

The second class are those which have their constitutions in the medium; if they are good ones, they are well arched in their ribs, they are wide over their loins, and rather straight in their carcasses; if they are not too leggy, they can come almost any racing lengths under moderate weights; they have generally good speed, and are pleasant horses to train. They are termed in the stables "the hearty ones."

The third class are those of delicate constitutions; they are, generally speaking, much too lengthy in their constitutional points, as well as in their speedy ones; if they are deep in their girths, they are more or less straight in their ribs, that is, their ribs are not sufficiently well arched; they are often long in their backs, narrow over their loins, very straight or light in their carcasses, and are high upon their legs. For want of more space in the former of these essential parts, and less length in the latter of them, they are but very middling race horses. It is true they have good speed, but they are almost invariably great jades; the shorter their races are the better they like them, as they cannot run but short lengths. Newmarket is the most likely place to do any good with them. Their being easily

alarmed, either in or out of the stables, makes them unpleasant horses to train ; nor, generally speaking, are they of much profit to their owners.

The fourth class I shall suppose to consist of three fillies, which makes up the number, twelve yearlings, I proposed to train. Now, with regard to their physical or constitutional powers, they do not vary from the colts, but, like them, are craving, hearty, and flighty ; and upon their structure, the same as with the colts, will depend their different racing properties ; and their tempers also are similar. But, as they advance on to mares, they become in training more troublesome and uncertain than horses ; this proceeds from their natural propensity to sexual intercourse, which is greater in racing fillies and mares than with other fillies and mares in common use. The former require to be highly fed and warmly clothed ; and from their standing in stables of a warm temperature with entire horses, (which was almost invariably the case when I was a boy), their natural propensity more often predominates, and which, as I have before noticed, is the cause of so strong and frequent a desire in them for sexual intercourse ; and this, not only as the spring advances, but at various other times in the course of the year ; if the weather is hot (to use a common expression) they become very keen a-horsing. During the time they remain in this state, they are more or less debilitated and unhappy for the want of intercourse with the horse. They frequently turn their heads

as far round in the stall as they can, looking disconsolate about them. They often refuse their food, or rather they eat but little for the time they continue in season. The groom cannot, therefore, send them along in their work as he could wish. When this happened to mares near the time of their running, they were usually considered to be seven or ten pounds below their proper form. Indeed, however capable they may have been of winning, it has sometimes been found difficult for a jockey to make them do so, in consequence of their being so much disposed to lean or hang to the horse or horses with whom they may be running; and thus occasionally have mares lost races in which they have been engaged. When it is known that mares are thus so repeatedly troublesome in training, the better way is to stint them in the spring; they then go on very well. These are my reasons for recommending fillies to be invariably kept in stables by themselves; nor should mares (as of course their nature is not changed) ever be allowed to run in the company of horses, and certainly not in the company of entire horses; for the less frequent they get to wind entire horses, the less likely they are to become a-horsing. For a similar reason, horses in training should also be kept by themselves, as they will be more quiet and contented, and will be less frequently calling after mares.

I shall now proceed to give directions how these yearlings are to be got ready to go on to the downs,

(say in the month of October), as by this time the others (the older horses and mares) will have done their running. The groom, having looked out what clothing and saddles and bridles are necessary, is next to select from among his steadiest and best riding boys those of the lightest weights, and, putting one to take charge of each of the yearlings in question, he orders the whole of them to be dressed; their body clothes and saddles are then put on, as with the other horses. The stables then being locked up, they are all left to stand with their heads up and muzzles on, until the boys have got their breakfasts; when they return with the groom to the stables, the bridles and hoods are then put on to both horses and colts; each boy now mounts in the stable the horse or colt he looks after; and the whole of them are then rode out into the stable-yard: here they are to walk for a short time, till their saddles may get settled to their backs. They then walk on to the downs, followed by the groom on his hack. The old horses, for the present under the care of the head lad, may go to any convenient part of the ground, to exercise by themselves, as directed by the groom; but the yearlings must now be under the tuition of the groom himself, so that he may be able to obtain a thorough knowledge of how they are likely to turn out. For, although we are to consider them as being well broken, yet it is likely there are some among them who may, from the necessary indulgence occasionally allowed them,

have become hearty, and some others may shew some little hereditary vice. A colt or two, becoming unruly from either of those causes, may swerve or bolt out from the string; if he do not break away, he may rear up, spring forward, and then lash out behind; in doing of which he may get the better of a small light boy and throw him. If a colt does this, he will, the first opportunity that offers, (as the boy being off his guard), have recourse to the same sort of thing again, with a view to be master; and if he should become headstrong in this way, no matter how good he may be as to stoutness or speed, he is most likely spoiled for ever as a race horse, or rather there is no dependence to be placed on him when running. A colt being unruly from being too hearty, and a colt being unruly from vice, are two very different things; the former, with proper management, is soon got the better of, and perhaps without changing the boy, as we shall presently shew; but the latter requires the immediate attention of the groom, who will soon find he must change the small light boy for one that is bigger, stronger, and more determined on horseback, and that knows well how to forward a young colt.

The groom should have his eye as much as possible on both boy and colt, so as to give directions to the former, in case he should at any time be inclined to be too severe in correcting a colt for a fault. I have in the first volume, in teaching boys to ride, directed, that they are, under various cir-

cumstances, to be kind to colts and horses, with a view to preserve their tempers. Yet those orders of kindness are not to be carried to the extreme with any of them, and more particularly towards a colt that may from hereditary vice be resolutely inclined to become decidedly restive. A colt of this sort, as a yearling, may be got the better of by keeping upon him at all times a good riding boy, who, from being accustomed to ride tricky ones, is mostly on his guard, and soon finds out or feels when a colt of this sort is inclined to be what is called "a little botty." The moment the boy finds the colt is about to begin any of his tricks, he should immediately set-to with him as determinedly as possible—by getting resolutely at him, and rous ing him, or rather frightening him, by taking suddenly a determined pull at him, and chucking up his head, then quickly shortening the rein on the reverse side to that which the colt is inclined to go, and, if possible, pulling his head round with a certain degree of violent force, chucking up his head again and handling his mouth roughly with the bit, and, if he can with safety to himself, he should send both his heels back with great force against the colt's sides. If the boy finds he is getting the better of the colt, he should take a straight, strong pull at him to pull him up, and make him stand for a moment, just now using rather loud and rough sort of language to him, then make him go quietly up into his place in the string with the other colts; and

here the boy should have a constant eye upon him. I have often found this sort of rough treatment answer far better than striking a colt with an ashen plant. I do not, as I have already observed, approve of fighting with colts or horses, if it can be avoided; yet, it may sometimes be necessary to have recourse to blows as a last resource, to endeavour to get the better of a thick, sulky, ill-disposed colt.

I have given these precautions to the groom and boy, with a view to put them on their guard with a tricky colt, on his first appearance in the string on the downs. I will now put the groom and boy again on their guard, with respect to colts commencing and going on with their work, as some of them get cunning after having gone up a few gallops. Craving colts, and hearty colts, may occasionally require such correction as I have just noticed; but the flighty irritable colts must never be corrected; for what, by many, are considered as faults in them, principally arise from their natural timidity; so that to fight with them would alarm them, and in short spoil them as racers. In what manner they ought to be treated, I shall of course state when I come to the training of them.

A craving or hearty colt, become cunning from having gone up a few gallops, may some morning, as he is approaching to, or commencing, one of his gallops, look at what he is going about, that is, if I may so say, he looks at the work he is going to begin; and, unless the boy is on his guard, he is

very likely to rear up and bolt round, and perhaps try to break away; or, if he do not do this, he may, if a tricky one, in going up the gallop, shut up and go out; in other words, he will sulk and slacken his pace, and then bolt suddenly out from the string, break away, and get some distance before he can be pulled up. An ill-disposed colt will sometimes rather unexpectedly take these advantages of a small light boy; when he does this, to prevent a repetition of it, the slight boy must be taken off the colt, and another put up, of more power and experience; and, as he is apprized of the sort of colt he is going to ride, he strictly watches him, not only as he is walking to the gallop, but after he has commenced it. Now, a few lengths previous to the colt coming to that part of the gallop which he may before have gone out at, the boy should there persevere with him, to make him keep his place in the string; and, if he finds it necessary, he should have recourse quickly to such methods of correction as have already been spoken of, with the additional aid (in his right or left hand, whichever is found to be most convenient) of his ashen plant, raised over his own head or near to the colt's, and using occasionally rough sort of language, in going along to the end of the gallop. If the boy has been able to keep the colt straight throughout the gallop to the end of it, he should, after having pulled him up, notice him a little, but not too much. If a thick craving rogue of a colt, or a hearty one, similarly disposed, cannot

be got the better of by the treatment I have advised, further severities, as having repeated recourse to blows, will seldom be found to answer. Many a hearty colt may become a little tricky merely from being too fresh; such a colt only requires the quiet treatment of a good riding boy, with an occasional increase of work to steady him.

It is to be understood, that all these young ones are to be taught in turn, not only to lead the class to which they belong, as well in walking out from as in returning to the stables, but also occasionally to lead the gallop.

After these yearlings have gone through what I have laid down relative to them, it may fairly be concluded that they have been long enough under the care of the groom for him to have become thoroughly acquainted with what they all are, as regards their constitutions and tempers.

In getting ready the first class of these young ones, (the craving ones), either to try or to run, something like regular work should be given them. The second class, the hearty ones, will require less work, with more teaching. The third class, the flighty ones, require very little more than teaching alone; that is to say, if they are properly taught, they are generally sufficiently trained.

Now, according as the disposition of a colt of the third class is steady or flighty, so must his treatment be varied; those that are steady enough to follow each other in their exercise may do so; but those

that are easily alarmed had much better go by themselves. All the colts of this class should have good and patient riding boys, not only for their exercise, but to look after them in the stable. No matter where they are alarmed, or at what they are alarmed, if once they are so, it will be some time before they get the better of a fright. The groom must therefore carefully watch them and the boys; and he must caution the latter never, scarcely under any circumstances, to strike them, or even to pull more rashly at them than is absolutely necessary to pull them up, or to prevent them, when hearty, from getting the better of them. If any of these colts become alarmed by going constantly to one particular part of the downs, where they may occasionally have had a few gallops, the groom should immediately take them to another part, and let them be there at walking exercise for a few days; then take them back to the old ground, but, instead of galloping them, let them walk these gallops, and walk about other parts of this ground for two or three days; then he should take them back to the ground at which they were not frightened, and if they appear here pretty hearty, he should endeavour to steal a gallop into them, just letting them go off as they like.

If any colt among these flighty ones will not bear even the sort of treatment I have just described, he should be taken on to the turnpike road early in the morning, where he should do the most of his exer-

cise, and the more like a hack he does it, the more reconciled he will become; and if he has good action, he may walk long lengths, which will give him an appetite. If there is in the neighbourhood a gradual good sort of lengthy hill, that may perchance have a narrow strip of turf running by the side of it, the colt in question should walk occasionally up such hill, and at other times, by way of change, and with a view to forward him, he should (putting him into a trot some way before he comes to the hill, and giving him his head,) be allowed to trot on up any portion of the hill as may be thought sufficient to bring his lungs into pretty good action. If the hill is short, he should trot up the whole length, and instead of pulling him at the top, he be made to continue on, on the level, for half a mile, then pull him up and make much of him; then walk him quietly home, if possible, by a different road from that by which he came. At other times of his going out, there should be a steady hack rode out with him, by the side of him, following, or before him, whichever the colt appears to be the most reconciled to. At other times, with the hack along with him, he should proceed to any of the neighbouring markets or fairs; here let them walk quietly about in the noise and bustle of the crowd, making very much of the colt, who cannot here be treated too kindly, (see Colt Breaking, Vol. I. Chap. 24, pp. 483, 489), with a view to make him rather fond of the crowd, so that he may not be

alarmed on being walked out from the rubbing-house into the crowd on the course the first time of his being brought out to run. Indeed, unless a colt or horse will walk out of the rubbing-house into the crowd, and remain there unconcerned, and, in his running and concluding a race, go freely up between the rails of the course, and boldly pass through the crowd, and is not more pleased than annoyed by their cheering as he passes the winning-post, I say of him, as Shakspeare has said of man, "Let no such horse be trusted."

The next thing the groom has to do is to teach his colts, as they are approaching towards two years old, to go by the side of each other in their exercise, and also to stop by the side of each other when pulled up on finishing their gallops. But, previous to the groom practising his colts at this, he should take an opportunity of steadying them, by giving them, for two or three days, such long walking exercise, with occasional lengthy gallops, as their ages and constitutions will safely bear; then, on the morning he commences teaching his colts to go in the way just mentioned, he should put upon the colt he intends to lead the gallop an experienced good riding boy, who from practice knows well how to forward a colt on this or any other occasion, or perhaps as more preferable, if light enough, the head lad, as the groom would only have to say to the latter—"We must see how these young ones will go by the side of each other as they approach

the close of the gallop, and whether we can get them to stop pretty nearly opposite each other when pulled up at the end of it." Two or three of them may now and then be practised together.

If it is a good riding boy that is to lead this sort of gallop, he had better be put on a good sort of hack, or a steady horse that has been some time in training; but we will suppose the head lad to lead the above-mentioned gallop, as he may do it on one of the most steady of the colts. In the morning, either in the stables, or as he is going along on his hack to the ground with the colts, the groom cautions the boys, first, by telling them what he wants done with the colts, and then bids them be steady, and mind and attend to what will presently be said to them by the head lad. The head lad, on arriving at the ground, should say to the boys, as they are approaching the gallop—"Keep fast your colts' heads, and follow me." When he sees that the colts are off and settled in their stride, he again says to them—"Come gradually on with your colts until you are nearly head and girth with my colt, parallel with my colt; but mind that you keep your colts sufficiently wide apart, so that they may have no inclination to fly at each other." By the time the colts have got in their places on the gallop, as we have here described, they will have arrived within a quarter of a mile of the end of it. The lad, seeing them go on as they ought, should again speak to the boys, and tell them to take a steady pull at their colts, and direct them at the

same time to finish the gallop at a little faster pace; but to be careful not to pass him if they can avoid it. On their having made this little run together, they are to be pulled up as nearly as possible in a line with each other. They should now be let stand to blow their noses, if they like, during which time they should be made much of; and, previous to their going to the troughs to water, they should be walked quietly about in line with each other, but, as has been just observed, not so close as to allow of any colt becoming unpleasantly familiar with the one that may be next to him.

Thus should colts be practised, not only until they go quietly by the side of each other, but until they will let other colts or horses come rather suddenly up by the side of them, in a gallop, a trial, or a race without being alarmed or swerving away from them; and until they will, when pulled at easily stop nearly in a line with each other, under either of the above-mentioned circumstances.

Any colt that may swerve or break away with a boy while at this sort of exercise should on the next, and every succeeding day, be ridden by the head lad, until he has got the colt to do what is necessarily required of him; and when the head lad gives up riding such colt, one of the best riding boys must at all times ride him in his exercise. All the colts we have here been mentioning should in succession be ridden by the head lad, who should practise them occasionally to go to what is called "the head," that is, a little in the front of the other colts, he (the lad)

having previously cautioned the boy that may be riding a colt against him, to sit steady and not urge his colt on beyond the pace he has been accustomed to go, while he steadily goes, for a short way up the gallop, head and neck with the colt against him. The lad, then taking a pull, should go head and head for a few strides; then for a short distance, before finishing the gallop, he should go out to the front, and take the lead for a few lengths, just previous to the pulling up of the two or three colts, whichever it may be.

Thus should the colts occasionally be practised on the downs; or, which is to be preferred, up between the rails of a course, passing the winning post, and pulling them up at the usual or convenient distance beyond it; and after they have recovered their wind, they should be turned about, and walked back to the weighing-house; here the boys, if not too small, may dismount and make much of them, then get on them again, and walk them quietly away.

Such are the precautionary measures to be observed in the teaching of yearlings and two-year olds on their first coming on to the downs to be trained, with a view to preserve their tempers, and prevent their becoming tricky; no matter how good the racing properties of a colt may be, if, from improper management, he should, at the above early age, get into any of the habits already mentioned, he is, as I have before noticed, most likely spoiled for ever as a race horse, or, rather, there is no dependence to be placed on him when he is called upon in severe

running, nor can his owner ever think of backing him for a single guinea.

Yearlings that are thus far forwarded by teaching are many of them sufficiently well trained for the length they have to come; and with those that are not so, as the thick ones and the hearty ones, the groom may do a bit of work, and get them into something like condition, that is, he may get them about three parts ready, if the weather keeps open, and they have not been tired; they also may, if the owner wishes it, at the usual weights and lengths, have a spin together just before Christmas, merely to see what may be good or bad among them.

This sort of trial gallop being over by the end of December, the yearlings may now be laid by, that is, they should be indulged for a month or six weeks, coming out only on occasional days to be lunged, with a view merely to keep them in health. Two or three of the first class, more particularly if a little queer in their tempers, would perhaps be the better of being ridden quietly about, either daily or every other day, until about the middle or end of February. Which of these two periods must depend of course on the time they are to come out to run as yearlings, that is, whether it be in the middle or end of April.

All that we have stated in this chapter, with regard to the teaching of yearlings, also stands good in the teaching of two-year olds, that is, if the latter do not leave their paddocks until they are two years old.

CHAPTER XV.

PHYSICKING YEARLINGS.

Towards the conclusion of the last chapter, I stated the necessity of the yearlings being laid by (about the end of the month of December) for the space of six weeks, to be somewhat indulged; and considering that period elapsed, it brings us to the middle of February. By this time the yearlings in question are, as far as regards their constitutions, in a fit state to have their physic given them, that is, if they are sound and healthy, and have plenty of flesh on them, and are to be got ready to come to post to run at about the end of April.

The groom will of course have the cavessons put on those of the third class that have been properly enough laid by to indulge, and from which they will have become very hearty, and have them walked out and lunged for a few days, so as to steady them a little before they are again mounted; or, as some of the horses in the stables, of different ages, will have to come out to run early in the spring, these will by

this time have begun their sweats, and on any mornings they are going to sweat, the colts I am just alluding to may go out at the same time with them, and may be walked about and lunged a little; and when the horses that have been sweating are scraped and done, their sweaters may be rolled up, and put securely on the colts' saddles, to be carried home to the stables; when, if the groom thinks it necessary, he may order the cavessons to be taken off the colts, their mouthing-bits to be put on, and let them stand heared up on the pillar reins for half an hour; their things may then be taken off, and they may be dressed and shut up with the other horses. This is not a bad way of steadying some colts, that may be more hearty or fractious than others. From the above precautions having been taken, our colts and fillies are become quiet, and ride now much as they did when we left them in December.

The next thing to be done is to get them through their physic, or, more properly speaking, to get their physic through them. For the manner of preparing them for their physic, as also how they are in every respect to be treated while under its operation, either in or out of training, see Vol. I. Chaps. 7 & 8, on the Various Causes for Physicking Race Horses.

The reader is not to forget that the twelve yearlings to be trained are in four different classes. The colts are in three classes: the first are the thick, strong-constitutioned colts—these will require physic; the second class are the hearty ones, there may be one

or two of these that may also require physic; the third class, the flighty ones, scarcely ever require medicine of any kind. The fourth class, the fillies —there may, perhaps, be one of this class that may be benefited by the administration of physic.

Now, there are some few precautions to be taken in the physicking of these young ones: first, it will be advisable, by way of experiment, to begin with small doses of the best Barbadoes aloes, as three drachms, or three drachms and a half, in the first dose. To a colt of the first class, the latter portion may be given; to a colt of the second class, it will be best to give the former portion; and, according to the effects the medicine may produce on each colt, so should the interval of time be increased between each dose, from eight to ten days; and, by the same rule, so in proportion should the quantity of aloes be diminished or increased in giving the second dose. A third dose of physic may, no doubt, be requisite for each of the colts in the first class; yet it will be advisable to keep this third dose in reserve, until the groom sees in what manner the work these colts will be put to do will affect their constitutions. We may give a third dose to each of them after their first sweat, or we may give it after their second sweat, or we may not have to give it at all, if the weather keeps open, and the groom is of opinion that the work the colts have begun will, by being gradually continued, bring them in due time sufficiently clear in their wind, and straight and handsome in their

carcasses, without either abusing their legs, or reducing too much their muscular system. Now, on the other hand, should a frost set in early in March, and continue until this month may be nearly or perhaps quite concluded, these colts would then have to go to exercise on the straw beds for three weeks or a month. Under these circumstances it would be necessary, to assist in keeping their legs cool and in shape, and also to prevent them from getting too fat in their insides, to have recourse to the reserve doses, by giving, in addition to the two first, not only a third dose of physic, but perhaps even a fourth. For the second class colts, as they do not require to be in as strong work as those of the first class, two doses of physic each will be sufficient, unless, as I have already noticed, a frost should set in, when a third dose may be necessary; but I should say not otherwise. The third class colts are too delicate to do any thing like work, they therefore seldom or ever want medicine, unless labouring under disease.

The reader may now form some idea of the purposes for which physic is given to colts or horses in health, either in or out of training.

CHAPTER XVI.

TRAINING YEARLINGS.

The time it has taken to get our yearlings through their physic brings us now to the first of March; as they will not have to come out to run until near the end of April, we shall have about eight weeks to train them. This allowance of time will be amply sufficient; not that it is necessary for yearlings to be at constant and regular exercise for the whole of this period, but for the three first weeks of the eight it will be advisable to be doing little and little every day, or every other day, as in giving to those strong colts of the first class such walking and galloping exercise as may be found necessary to steady them, and keep their memories refreshed. We shall then have five clear weeks for the doing of what may be called a bit of work with them. The first week of the five, they may go such steady, brushing gallops as will bring them sufficiently clear in their wind to enable them to go with tolerable ease to themselves through the first gentle sweat.

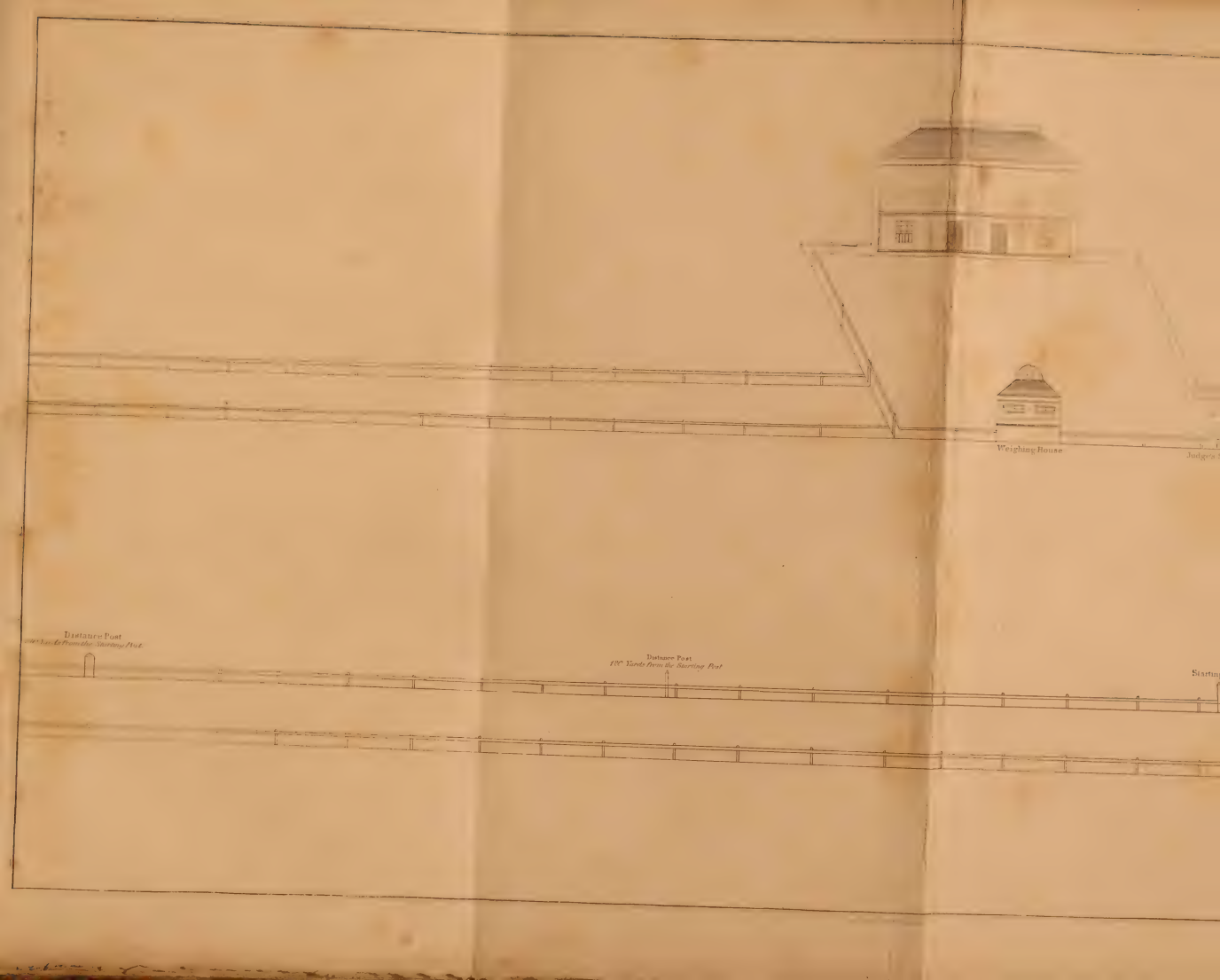
The first week of the five being disposed of as above advised leaves us four weeks clear, which is

CHAPTER XVI.

TRAINING YEARLINGS.

The time it has taken to get our yearlings through their physic brings us now to the first of March; as they will not have to come out to run until near the end of April, we shall have about eight weeks to train them. This allowance of time will be amply sufficient; not that it is necessary for yearlings to be at constant and regular exercise for the whole of this period, but for the three first weeks of the eight it will be advisable to be doing little and little every day, or every other day, as in giving to those strong colts of the first class such walking and galloping exercise as may be found necessary to steady them, and keep their memories refreshed. We shall then have five clear weeks for the doing of what may be called a bit of work with them. The first week of the five, they may go such steady, brushing gallops as will bring them sufficiently clear in their wind to enable them to go with tolerable ease to themselves through the first gentle sweat.

The first week of the five being disposed of as above advised leaves us four weeks clear, which is


Weighing House
Distance Post
Distance Post
100 Yards from the Starting Post

about the time, if the weather keeps open, that these strong colts will take to be in regular training. There may be a thick glutton of a yearling, in this first class, that puts up flesh very fast, and that is idle in his wind; this sort of colt would require to be as regularly worked, in the lengths of his gallops and sweats, as an aged horse, before he can be got sufficiently light in himself, and clear in his wind, to be able to come his best pace equally with those colts that are much more delicate, and consequently sooner ready. Unless the above precautions are taken in the training of a thick colt, he may deceive the trainer in his trial or race. The trainer must therefore make allowances, and begin with such colt accordingly; yet, the reader must observe, that, upon a more general scale, yearlings do not require to be drawn very fine, that is, not stripped of what is commonly called "their waste and spare." These young ones run but short lengths, and, although they be a little lusty, their flesh is not likely to fatigue them before their race is over, (provided they are in good wind), at least not those colts of the second and third class.

The second class colts will not take more than four weeks to get them ready to run; the first week of the four they should be getting ready for their first sweat, much in the same way as I have described should be done with the colts of the first class, only allowing for the delicacy of the former, by merely letting them have such walking exercise as will give

them an appetite for their food, and such galloping exercise as will steady them, and also bring them pretty clear in their wind.

The third class of colts will for the present require little more than walking exercise.

Let us suppose the twelve yearlings I have been writing about to have actually been thus far forwarded in their training; those of the first class, from the exercise and physic they have had, will alter very much from the state of condition in which they were when they first left their paddocks. There will also be some favourable changes in the condition of the second and third classes: the muscular system of the bodies of the horses of the three classes will have diminished in weight, more or less, while their legs will have increased in strength; that is, the tendons of them will have enlarged, and become strong and well braced, from the action they have had; so that when they arrive in the morning on the downs to exercise, (after allowing them to walk long enough to have become steady, and have emptied themselves), we may venture to send them up their gallops, without much fear of breaking them down. The length of gallops that yearlings may go may be half a mile, a little more or a little less, just according as the groom may observe the length his colts are going in their gallops may affect the constitutional strength and temper of either the one or the other of them.

Yearlings having been gradually forwarded as I

have advised, their will be no danger to be apprehended from their going in their gallops the above lengths, provided the boys are light, the ground not deep, and that the colts are not allowed to go beyond that of a steady even pace; I mean by this, that they are not to be allowed in their gallops immediately to extend themselves. Those colts that are observed not to do well by going gallops of long lengths, let them go shorter ones; and, with a view to bring those colts stout, the deficiency of length in their gallops can, if necessary, be made up by increasing the length of their sweats. Why I wish yearlings to go steadily a moderate good length in their gallops is, that I wish as early as possible to bring them somewhat acquainted with the advantage of going steady and collected in their stride. To accomplish this, they must all have good riding boys upon them, particularly the boy who leads the gallop; he should be a good judge of pace, and know well how to forward a colt. The groom, in giving his orders to the boys as to how they are to ride their colts, which we suppose to be on the downs, should speak to them thus:—"Mind boys, keep your places, and get quietly away with them, and as soon as they are settled in their stride, drop your hands and keep a light steady hold of their heads." Although the groom gives his orders generally to the whole of the boys, it is to the boy who leads the gallop, whose name, for example, we will say is Tom, that he gives his more important

directions; perhaps, just as the colts are approaching the gallop, the groom calls out—"Tom, mind you do not take them too fast; and when you come to such a part of the gallop (naming an object well known to the boy), take a quiet pull and finish steadily with them in the little run you will have to make to the end of the gallop." When they are all pulled up as near in line together as may be, they should be allowed to stand for two or three minutes to recover their wind.

Going thus regularly on in their gallops, teaches them how to make use of their legs, by getting the fore ones well out; and the closer they are together the better, provided their feet do not interfere or come in contact with their fetlock joints or legs, and, by so doing, cut the former or bruise the latter. Their hind legs should be well in, or under them, and the wider apart they are in reason the better. Colts that are kind in their tempers, and not hurried too early in their work, soon become acquainted with the advantage of their stride, and will, (if properly ridden), when called upon to exert themselves, get gradually to the extent of their stride, and will ably maintain their best pace in a good rally, without being over-marked, and made what is called "a spread eagle of."

The increasing of the pace of yearlings in their gallops, and the length they are to go in them, especially with respect to colts of the first and second classes, must be regulated by the training groom,

according to circumstances, as that of his noticing how their different constitutions may vary, or each colt may become affected by the different gallops he may be taking. And it is also to be observed that the whole of these colts, although yearlings, must go such a pace and length in their gallops, as, from one sweating day to the other, may be found necessary to keep them all sufficiently clear in their wind, so as to enable them to take the few sweats they may have to do with tolerable ease to themselves. But the reader must bear in mind, that the method I have here advised for the teaching of the first and second class colts to stride steadily in their gallops, can seldom or ever be practised in a similar way with any of the third class, the latter being much too irritable in their tempers to be taught in this manner.

To give the colts of this third class confidence in doing their exercise, (as I have already noticed), various are the means that must be had recourse to, as that of changing from one system of treatment to another, as often as may be found necessary, so as to bring them reconciled to do what you require of them, by walking or galloping them in different situations, by going from one part of the downs to another, allowing them to walk quietly about in retired places, and now and then walking them on the different gallops. Long walking exercise not only steadies them, but it gives to most of them, what they are often in want of, an appetite for their food.

At walking exercise they may follow each other in a string; but, in their gallops, it will be advisable, with those that are easily alarmed, to send them singly. When opportunities offer, they may be walked out on to the last mile of a course; but let them first walk up between the rails here, and pass the winning-post, stop them and then turn them about, and walk them off at that part of the course they would have to walk off at had they been running. At other opportunities, they may walk out to such a suitable part of the finishing of the course, as to allow them to go up between the rails a long steady gallop singly—such a length of gallop as yearlings ought to take; or, there may be two of them that may quietly follow each other, putting a steady two or three year old colt in front of them, or a good sort of hack, I care not which, so that the colts in question go content up their gallops, and that, when they have passed the post, they pull up and walk quietly off afterwards. If they should walk contentedly away, after having their occasional or daily gallops, for a few times on one piece of ground, it will be advisable to take them from such ground before they shew symptoms of being alarmed, and then to let them go on with a daily repetition of their exercise on the new ground, being careful to remove them from this also before they become frightened.

Considering our yearlings to have been long enough at walking exercise to have recovered from

the effects of their physic, and to have been sufficiently long, also, at galloping exercise to have got pretty clear in their wind, we will, in the next chapter, get them through their sweats.

CHAPTER XVII.

SWEATING THE FIRST CLASS OF YEARLINGS.

We now come to speak of the sweating of those young colts of the first class, which are now something more than two years old. The length of their sweats should be from two miles to two miles and a quarter. These colts being hearty feeders, put up flesh very fast; and although I do not by any means hold with that of drawing young ones fine, yet there are now and then some among them so very thick and close made as to require, even at this early age, their being brought, by a repetition of gentle sweats, into something like the shape and form of a race horse. How often a yearling will have to sweat must depend on what effect the first sweat may have produced on him, in reducing the surface of his muscular system, and on the time the training groom may observe the colt again putting up flesh, according to which the interval should be regulated from one sweating day to the other. A groom cannot be too careful in observing how a colt puts up flesh; nor,

on the other hand, can he be too careful how he takes it off him. I mean by this, that I prefer a young one, and more particularly the sort of yearling to which I am now alluding, to appear, on his coming to post, (particularly if a big one), as to his muscular surface, rather full or high, provided he is clear in his wind, and that he has got a little longer length into him than that he is going to run. The groom is to ascertain these two last-mentioned circumstances, by observing sufficiently early how his colt is going on with his work; and what more principally will guide him is, how this same colt comes home in the finishing his last two or three sweats. But he must take care that the colt has on him, in doing his two last sweats, a smart, light, good riding boy, who knows how to put his orders into practice.

It is to be understood that this colt in his turn has kindly enough led the gallop or sweat for others of his class; we will now, therefore, put him to lead the last two sweats he has to do as a yearling; and this is merely that the groom may know to a certainty how he can finish or come home in them.

The groom now cautiously gives his orders to the boy that rides the colt; he says—"You must mind, Bill, what you are about; come you off with them presently" (meaning the two or three colts of the first class that may be going to sweat together) "at a steady even pace, until you come to such a part of the ground," naming some known object as a guide to the boy, and which object should be about three

quarters of a mile from where the colts pull up on finishing their sweats. The groom, in going on with his directions, says, "when you get there, take a quiet pull to set your colt agoing, and come with him at a quiet sweating pace; but as you know he is rather an idle one, if you find it necessary to get at him, by now and then taking a pull and hustling him along, do so; for you must mind to come home the whole of the way from where I tell you at a good, fair, sweating pace." The groom, knowing his hack (which he is upon at the time) to be a pretty quick one for a short length, says to the boy as he is about to leave him, "I shall be waiting for you within about half a distance from where I told you to pull up, and for about two or three lengths before you come to me, take a pull at your colt, and twist him along. I shall go head and girth home with you, for I want to see how your colt will finish his sweat in this length of rally; but mind, you are not to be too severe upon him, or you will overset him in his stride." The groom, in speaking to the boys on the colts that may have to follow in this same sweat, says—"Keep a steady pull on your colts and endeavour, without severity, to keep your places, that is, mind you do not persevere too much with them."

The above colts having gone well through their sweats, and the colt that leads having finished very satisfactorily, the groom now thinks, or perhaps he talks the thing over to himself, and says, speaking

of the colt that led, "Well, he has come in his sweat at a good, fair, sweating pace, for a little longer length than he will have to run, either in his trial or race, and I know by my hack that he finished in a rally of nearly half a distance at something like a racing pace; he pulled up sound, and blowed his nose in good time; and he walked away strong and well to the rubbing-house." The groom, still talking on to himself, speaking again of the colt that led the sweat, says, "As he is in such good wind, he cannot be very fat in his inside; as to his being high is of no consequence, for his flesh cannot fatigue him in the short length he has to come; and by the time he has done what is necessary to finish him, he will come out ripe and in good form, at least I do not think, thick and close made as he is, if well ridden, that he can deceive me in running either in his trial or race."

The above calculations are such as should be made by the groom in his getting ready to run a strong constitutioned colt. Unless such precautions as I have noticed are attended to, a groom may be deceived in the trying or running of the above described colt; and such colt, from not being in a fit state to be tried, may very undeservedly be considered much too slow to race, in consequence of which he probably may be sold greatly under his value.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SWEATING THE SECOND AND THIRD CLASS OF YEARLINGS.

The constitutions of colts of the second class have already been noticed as being in the medium, and that they are also moderate feeders. The reader must therefore bear in mind, that however lusty they may be, on their first coming into training, they will, by less work, not only come more readily into shape, but will be much longer putting up their flesh, from one sweating day to the other, than those colts of the first class: they consequently will not have to sweat as frequent as those mentioned in the last chapter. Although these second class colts are rather more delicate than the first class, yet there may be one or two among them that will not do so well in being trained by the usual or necessary repetition of gallops. A colt of this sort generally does better with rather longer walking exercise, (to increase his appetite), but with shorter and more gentle gallops before and after water. A groom, in training him, will in all probability find, that

he will do better by being sweated rather oftener than those colts that will bear longer and more frequent gallops; but he must observe, that this colt, as also the others of this class, are lightly clothed in their sweats, more particularly if the morning should be warm.

On the first time of sweating these colts, the groom's orders to the boy that leads the sweat should be, "Come you off with them, Tom, at a gentle and even striding pace." As there will be no occasion for them to do more in the concluding of their sweats on each sweating day than very gradually to increase the pace a little, until they have to do their last sweat, at the latter part of which they should come home at a downright good sweating pace for a little longer length than they have to be tried, it will not be necessary for the groom to come home on his hack, in a short rally with them, as I have directed he should do with the first class colts; but it may be as well for him to be in waiting, within about a distance of where they pull up, so that he may see how they all finish their sweats, in passing him. If they pull up sound, blow their noses in good time, and walk well away to the rubbing-house, they will do; provided the little there is to be done with them afterwards is properly attended to, until they come out to run; and, as their race, like all of their year, is but a short one, (see the Racing Calendar), they cannot well come out too high in flesh, provided they are clear in their wind.

Now, with regard to the sweating of the third class yearlings, a very little of this sort of thing goes a great way, even with the best of them; one or two of them may occasionally have to go over the sweating ground with a view to bring them somewhat stout for the little length they have to come. But, as there is nothing to be taken off the muscular surface of these colts, and as they are light in their carcasses, they are almost invariably in good wind. They should therefore go over the sweating ground lightly clothed, or, if the morning is warm, they may go over it stripped. They may go in company with each other, or singly, whichever may best suit their tempers. Some colts of this class are so very delicate and irritable that they never require to be taken over the above-mentioned ground during the whole time of their being in training.

I shall not here make mention of the further treatment necessary to finish the training of each of these classes of colts, as the different brushing gallops they are to have given them from their last sweating day up to the third or second day before they run. Nor shall I notice the setting them the night before their race, nor the putting on their plates, or plaiting of their manes, on the morning before they have to come to post. Those matters will be fully explained in different chapters, when we are describing the training of the horses of different ages; for the same rule stands good in the finishing of yearlings, (only allowing that they are yearlings), from their last sweat to

the day of their race, as in finishing the horses of all ages from their last sweat to the day of their race. We will consequently consider the whole of the former as being ready to come out to be tried, and which will be the subject of the two next chapters.

CHAPTER XIX.

TRYING OF YEARLINGS.

In the last three Chapters on the Training of Twelve Yearlings, I arranged them in four classes. The three first consisted of colts, three in each, and the fourth was fillies. This was merely intended to shew how the constitutions and dispositions of each class varied. But now, to give the reader a clear idea of how yearlings are to be tried, under all circumstances, I will, in this chapter, by way of example, alter the arrangement of the above twelve yearlings, by forming them into two classes only, which we will consider as consisting of six colts and six fillies in each class. Let us suppose that the above yearlings belong to one individual, and that there is in the park or on the premises of the owner, a convenient and private piece of ground, with posts erected at a suitable distance apart, to try these young ones for a little longer length (as a few strides) than they have to run in their races. (See the Racing Calendar). Now, the best way is to try each class separately, under the usual weights, as eight stone on the colts and seven or seven and a half on the fillies, care having been taken by the groom that the colts

are in all respects ready to be tried at the appointed time.

On the morning of the trial, the groom says to the head lad—"You must ride one of the three-year olds to the beginning of the trial ground, to set them on their legs; let the boys give them a short gallop a little way along the bottom from the start, and then pull them up, and walk them quietly back again towards the start; and as they are doing so, tell them to walk their colts up in line with each other; then tell them to keep a steady hold of their colts' heads, and, on seeing as they approach the winning-post, that they are all ready, and that you are yourself ready with your horse to take them off, give them the word 'away.' But, from the pains we have taken in teaching them, they, for young ones, know pretty well what they are about; and, as they are kind in their tempers, I have no doubt they will all go straight enough to the end, therefore you need not go farther with them than to see them all settled in their stride; you may then take a pull, and gradually or imperceptibly, as it were, decline running on with them, but just take care to wait as far in the rear of them as to see how each of the boys gets on with his colt. I shall be waiting for them about the winning-post." The groom is next to give his orders to the boys who are to ride the colts, either in the stable, or as he is going along with them to the ground. He says—"You must mind, boys, what you are about this

morning, in riding your colts in their trial; mind what Charles will presently tell you; and, as you are walking up to the starting-post, be sure you are all ready with your reins knotted, and keep a steady hold of your colts' heads, so that when he gives you the word to come off with him, take all the care you possibly can to come away together; do not, on any account, let any thing like a false start happen to any of you. But now, boys, you must mind, after you are all well off, not to get pulling or holding of your colts as if you were riding horses in a race; you must be sure not to do that sort of thing." The groom, now addressing himself to a boy who looks after a colt that he has some opinion of, says to him—"Sam, you must mind what you are about, for that colt of yours seems to me to be rather a resolute ready sort of comer; you must mind to be very quiet with him. When you are all well away from the start, if he likes to go to the head and make his own run, you have nothing more to do than to preserve your temper, and keep a good steady hold of his head, and let him go on with the pace as early and for as long a length as he likes, entirely of his own accord. Sit well down, and be as still on him as possible; and do not attempt in any way to urge him on beyond what he chooses to do himself; you must not do that sort of thing." The groom, now addressing himself to a boy that may be on a thick glutton of a colt, says—"Bill, mind to get well away with them, and begin early

to rouse that colt of yours, for he is rather an idle one; get at his head, and twist him along, and, if you think it is necessary, make use of your spurs occasionally, to urge him to run fairly on in the whole length of the trial, or he may deceive us." The groom, in speaking to four of the other boys, as Tom, Harry, Jem, and Fred, that are on colts in the medium, (that is, such colts as are kind in their tempers, and easily rode), says — "You must be gentle with those colts of yours; as soon as you are all well away, and your colts are settled in their stride, you have only to take a quiet pull to set them a-going, and persevere with each of them by repeating the pull just as often as you find it is necessary, so as to keep them at their best pace for the whole of the run home; that is, if you find they can run well on to the finish, but certainly not otherwise; therefore, be careful to bear in mind at what part of the ground, should it so happen, your colts begin to tire or be beat for pace; and be sure you do not for a moment attempt to persevere afterwards with them, by either getting up your ashen plants, or even to kick them with your heels; you must never do this with young ones that are kind in their tempers, and that will run freely on as far as they can of themselves." The groom, in speaking again to a boy that may be on a free flighty colt, says—"Frank, you have good patience, and you must be very quiet with your colt; as soon as he is off, let him make his own run, as early and for as long a length as he likes; you have only to endea-

vour, by lightly holding him, to keep him together, that is, as much within his stride as you can. If, on approaching near home, you find him beginning to tire, do not on any account attempt to strike him, or persevere with him in any way. Your better plan will be, to take a strong steady pull at him, as if you were going to pull him up, but not so determinedly as to pull him entirely out of his stride. The truth is, in case of your colt tiring, I want you to try, in the way I tell you, to get him as collected in himself as you can, so that he may finish the little he may have to do in concluding the trial, without, if possible, being alarmed."

The groom, having given the above orders, proceeds on his hack to the winning-post, placing himself sufficiently wide of it to have a clear view of how each colt comes in. The length the colts have to run being but a short one, he can see pretty clearly the sort of start they make; and he must narrowly observe how they are all coming, and immediately he sees the first colt pass the winning-post, he must place the others. Having done so, and questioned the boys as to the running, he then forms his opinion of the good or bad properties of each colt, agreeably to how they were placed in the trial.

On the following morning the six fillies should be tried in the same way as the colts were; and the groom will judge of them as he did of the colts, just according as they may be placed.

We will observe, with regard to riding a yearling

in a private trial, when he is well on his legs, and settled in his stride, that, if he should feel inclined to go to the head, and, by increasing his pace, he can get well away from the company, he should be permitted to do so, by being allowed to make his own run. The rider should never pull or wait with a yearling as he would do with a three or four year old in a race. Although this might be very well with one of the latter class, as he would have some idea of what his rider was about; yet it is a bad way to ride a yearling when he has not been long enough at it to know how to collect himself, and wait patiently. Pulling determinedly at him would baulk him of his stride, by which he would become flurried; indeed, if he was thus to be ridden in a trial, it would be no trial whatever. If a yearling in a trial will readily take the lead, the rider has nothing more to do than to sit quiet, and with a gentle steady pull keep his head straight, and let him go on with the pace he appears able to maintain to the end of the trial ground.

Whenever colts and fillies are tried, they should, on being pulled up after their trials, be let stand for a minute or two to recover their wind. As they are in good condition, if the morning is moderately cool, being stripped, they will not be heated in coming the length of the trial ground, they may, therefore, walk in line for a short time; or, if the water troughs are at a moderate distance, they may be walked up to them, and allowed to take a few go-downs of water; they may then walk away to the stables, or,

if none of them have been alarmed in their trials, they may go gently up a short gallop, and afterwards walk back into the stables. I recommend this sort of treatment, after their being tried, in order to make their trials appear to them as much like their exercise as possible, with a view to prevent their becoming alarmed. If any of them are frightened, from the exertion they have undergone in being tried, they will frequently refuse their corn for a stable hour or two; but, by gentle usage, and by watering them rather liberally, and not laying their corn before them in too large a quantity, they soon come to feed as usual, and forget the little bustle they have been engaged in.

It will now be advisable after a week or ten days to put into one and the same class the winner of the trial of the colts and the winner of the trial of the fillies, and such other colts or fillies of each class as were struggling near the head, or were tolerably well placed, for another trial. This trial will not only decide the difference between the colts and the fillies, but which is the best of the year out of the whole produce.

Supposing the trial to take place on a small scale, as where a breeder is breeding from four or five mares, the produce of which will, of course, consist of both colts and fillies; these, as far as regards the trying of them may be tried together in one class; and, according as they are placed in the concluding of the trial, the groom will judge of the speed each may possess.

We now come to speak of what may be considered a good trial, which is that of any colt or filly singling itself out from a strong field of young ones, by taking the lead immediately from the starting-post, and, from superiority of speed, getting an unreasonable length in front of all the others, and maintaining this sort of speed, the whole of the way to the winning-post, so that the other yearlings in the trial are not only unable to catch such colt or filly, but to stop at the pace in any part of the running. We shall suppose that two of the yearlings out of the twelve we tried were thus advantageously placed in the trial on passing the winning-post, and that one of the two was three or four lengths in front of the other, which, of course, we shall hereafter consider as our best colt. This is what may be considered a good trial, and one indeed of some importance to the owner; no matter what engagement such colt or filly may be entered into, as this is but a secondary consideration with the owner. His first object is to keep this matter a profound secret, and how this may be done shall be spoken of hereafter.

We will now suppose another case, as a man breeding from a single mare, and that he is desirous of trying her produce as a yearling, being aware that a colt or filly bred as above does occasionally turn out to be of so superior a cast, as at two or three years old to win some of the most valuable stakes we have at our principal meetings. The owner having no opportunity of trying his single

produce privately at home, sends it to a training establishment to be got ready to be tried publicly, by entering it into a stakes with other yearlings, which we will explain in the next chapter.

We will now notice some few arrangements relative to the disposal of the twelve yearlings we above supposed to have been tried. In the trying of so large a number, it will of course be found that there is a considerable variation among them, as regards the good or bad properties they may each possess, as we have already shewn. Those of size that are thought to have sufficient speed to come short lengths, as across the flat at Newmarket, or others that are thought to be sufficiently stout to come the Derby length at Epsom, or the St. Leger at Doncaster, will in due time be suitably entered by the training groom into a few of such of the good things as are to be run for at the above-mentioned places, either by two or three year old colts or fillies. Such others of the twelve yearlings as were proved not to be quite so fast as those first mentioned, we will consider as forming an inferior class; some of which may be likely to make good country-plate horses. We will turn these out into separate paddocks, in each of which there is of course a loose house and water trough. These colts are to remain here to be well fed with corn and hay until the month of September, by which time they will be two years and a half old, when it will be proper to take them up. The few remaining colts of the twelve, which were proved,

on being tried, to be so inferior to the others as to be totally useless for racing, are generally ill formed as to their structure; some of them are so big, leggy and unwieldy, as to be incapable of supporting their own bodily frame in coming a racing pace for anything like a racing length. While some others may be equally inferior from being small, under-sized weedy-colts, that have neither sufficient length, breadth, or substance, in any of those essential points, which would enable them to maintain their speed in a long race. These inferior colts should be disposed of as soon as possible to make room in the establishment for other stock, as also to save the expense of keep. Colts of the above description, bred in the neighbourhood of Newmarket, are there sold at the spring or autumnal meetings. Others, bred in different parts of the country, if they cannot be sold, either by private contract or public sale, in the neighbourhood wherein they are bred, are, if the distance is not too far, sent to London to Messrs. Tattersal's; here they are mostly sold for what they will fetch.

Previously to the concluding of this chapter, it may be necessary to observe, that the same arrangements, allowing for the difference of the year, stand good in the teaching, training, trying, running, and disposing of colts that may not be taken up from their paddocks until two years old.

CHAPTER XX.

RUNNING YEARLINGS.

At Newmarket, Catterick Bridge, Malton, or any other place at which racing meetings are held sufficiently early, there are mostly stakes opened for yearlings to be entered into. To have a tolerable true run race, it will be advisable to make the stakes worth winning; to obtain this point, the subscription should be thirty sovereigns each, ten forfeit; we will, to shew the reader how the thing is to be done, say, that the annual meeting at which the yearlings' stakes are to be run for is but a few miles distant from our home stable. We shall have to take a couple of horses to run for something at the above meeting. With the horses, we will take the two best yearlings we are supposed to have tried, both of which we found to be very superior to any yearlings we had ever tried before.

Now, it is proper that our horses should arrive at the stables in the neighbourhood of the meeting on the fourth day previous to its taking place, so that by exercising them every morning on the course, (which they may possibly have never run over before), they may become acquainted with it; and, to be certain that both our yearlings will at the same time kindly go up between the rails of the

course, they must accompany the horses for their own length. It is also advisable to make the two yearlings follow the race horses through the crowd on each day of their running up between the rails of the course in concluding their races.

Let us now proceed to shew how these little matters are to be carried into effect. Suppose the horses and colts to have arrived in the stable prepared for their reception in the vicinity of the meeting mentioned. On the following morning our horses and colts are to be taken out to the race course. The colts being ordered by the groom to go as far in front of the horses as will give them time to walk on by the side of the course up to where their gallop is to begin, are to be kept there moving about until the horses come up to them. The horses are to begin their walking exercise from the starting-post of the course, walking on as much of that part of the course as may be necessary to give them, in the latter part of it, a sufficient length of ground to take their gallops on; and as they are coming along in them, and are getting up nearly opposite to where the colts are, these latter should be ready to go off in their gallops, and follow the former, the whole of the way up between the rails, and pass the winning-post before they pull up. Thus are horses shewn a course, and colts taught to go up between the rails of one.

We now come to speak of how yearlings are to be brought to face the crowd on a race course, at

the time of the horses running. The way to do this is, on the first day of the meeting, and on each succeeding one, about an hour before the races begin, to take the yearlings in question on to the race course, under the charge of the head lad, who should be on a hack in the front of them. The lad, on his hack, followed by the colts, should go up between the rails of the course, and pass the winning-post; then being turned about, they should be walked back. down the outside of the rails among the foot people, (who are by this time pretty thickly assembled), and near to the most crowded parts; here they may occasionally be stopped, and allowed to look about them; after which they may be walked down to where the rails of the course conclude, or, if a longer length be necessary for the thick colt we shall bye-and-bye have to run here, as far down as where they, the colts, were before started off in their gallops. On turning them about here, if the head lad observes the course to be pretty clear, that is, not much crowded in its centre by the people, (which it ought never to be), he may start his hack off at a good, steady, quiet gallop, and, being followed by the colts, go up between the rails; after passing the winning-post, they should be pulled up and made much of, to give them confidence; and they should be kept walking about near to the crowd, as there is mostly great cheering among the people as the horses are running past them up to the winning-post. Should the colts, at this time,

appear to be the least timid, they are to be spoken kindly to and much noticed by the boys who ride them, so that they may not become alarmed; after which they should be taken home. At the same time on the morrow they are to be brought again on to the course; here they are to be walked about between the rails and in the crowd, as they were on the day previous. When the bell rings for the saddling of the horses that are going to run, the colts should be walked down between and as far below the rails as is necessary to admit of their getting tolerably clear out of the crowd. Their having arrived at this part of the course, the head lad, under whose care the two colts are, speaks to the boys who are riding them: he says—"Now mind you are both ready to follow me with your colts, immediately on the horses passing," (meaning the horses that are running). As soon as the whole of the horses are passed by, the head lad on his hack, and the boys on their colts, immediately follow the horses up the distance, passing the winning-post. The colts, on being pulled up here, should, as I have already observed, be kindly spoken to and much noticed by the boys on them; after which they may be kept walking about near the crowd for an hour, or until they have become cool and collected from the little surprise the bustle they have been engaged in may have occasioned, when they may be taken home.

Now, when a number of horses (say six or eight) are running at a country meeting, they mostly run

heats. Some of these horses will be ordered by their trainers to run for the first heat, while others of them may not be required to run this heat. The order given to the jockeys who ride the last-mentioned horses is—to wait, and not to run for the first heat. These jockeys, therefore, follow as close to the horses that are in front of them as may be necessary to give to their own the opportunity to save their distance. The jockeys, having done this, take a pull at their horses, and allow them to go slowly up the distance; having passed the winning-post, they pull them up, turn them about, and walk them back to the scales, dismount and weigh.

In describing the running of horses here, I confess I have digressed a little from my subject. I have done so merely to shew my readers, that there is no danger to be apprehended from colts following race horses in concluding their races, as the course is invariably kept clear from the crowd, until the whole of the horses that may be running have passed on to the winning-post.

As we are now satisfied that our yearlings will boldly face the crowd when running, let us return to the subject of the yearling stakes, of which we made mention in the early part of this chapter. In these stakes we suppose to have been entered in due time one of the two yearlings we brought with us to the meeting, (the second best colt), the one that ran within three lengths of the colt that won at the two trials of the three classes of colts and fillies, and

which we selected as being the best out of the twelve yearlings we tried in the last chapter.

Now, to ride our yearling we will put up our own jockey, whom we know to be an experienced good rider; he is an honest man, and has long been in the practice of riding both young ones and old ones, in trials and races, under all the various circumstances in which such things are done This man is consequently a good judge of what is called a racing pace; he is therefore fully capable of describing all the particulars of the running, in any race in which he himself may be engaged to ride. The instructions given by a trainer to a jockey, as to how he is to ride any colt or horse in a race, are termed "a jockey's orders." But as we are going to put upon our colt our own jockey, it will be more a matter of discourse between the trainer and the jockey, as to how the colt in question is to be ridden, than any very accurate or strict order to him on the subject.

Our jockey having brought himself down to the weight he is to ride, the trainer in the morning of the day the yearling stakes are to be run for, begins to converse with him as to how he wishes him to ride our colt in the race. He says to the jockey—"You must mind to get this idle yearling of ours well away with the rest of them from the start; as it is a short length you have to run, you must of course keep your place. But as our colt is not very likely to set-to of his own accord to run early in the

race, you will be able to see what the rest of them are about, and which among them are likely to run honestly home. What I want you to do with our yearling is, to take as good a measurement as you possibly can of all the others. I would much rather you did this than that you should call severely on our colt to come with a view to win the stakes, and perhaps, after all, you could only be second, which you know is the worst place you can be in, unless under certain circumstances, which we in the present instance have no occasion to trouble ourselves about. However, should there not be running enough made for our colt, you must begin making use of him sufficiently early in the race, so as to draw them out that we may know something about them."

Now let us, by way of example, suppose that six yearlings were entered in the stakes already named, and that they all came to post and ran; that it was a close race with the two first, and that our colt was a tolerably good third, but that the three others were beat a long way, or rather that they were not placed. The race being over, the colts are taken home. Now, after a race is over, it is an invariable rule for each training groom to question his jockey as to how or what running may be made by different colts or horses that may be engaged in any race. I shall therefore relate the sort of conversation that may be supposed to take place between our trainer and his jockey on the race in question, not only as o how our yearling ran, but as to how the rest of

them ran in this same race. The trainer, in talking the thing over privately with his jockey, says—"You all of you got a good start; you appeared to me to be running at a good pace; and, as far as I could discern, I thought the whole of you kept pretty well together, until you were within about a distance and a half of home, so that you must have had a tolerable good opportunity of seeing what the rest of them were about. Were you third by choice or by sufferance? How was the running between the first and second colts? Was the colt that won called upon severely to come, or did he win easy? As to the other three colts, they appeared to me to be fairly beat some way from home, and I suppose pulled off." The jockey, in answer to the trainer's questions, says—"The first part of the running was much as you saw it. The three colts that were last were beat for pace long before we made our run. The colt that won is a free, resolute sort of goer, the consequence of this was, his jockey had to keep fast hold of his head, and make the running for the whole of us. The colt that was second is also a ready comer; when we were a little more than half a distance from home, the winner was here quietly called upon by his rider to come, when he immediately began running at a severe pace, and the colt that was second got well away with him. Our colt, being so very idle, I could not get him out near his best pace quickly enough to lay close up by the side of them, so that, in the commencement of the run

home, they slipped me rather more than a length; but I clearly saw how the running was; it was a true run race between them, but I do not think it was accurately so with our colt; for, after I had got him pretty well out, he kept his place in the run to the winning-post, and as they (the two jockeys that were in front) saw me persevering with our colt, when they commenced their run, they would naturally conclude, as I was third, that their colts were faster than ours, and more particularly so, as they also saw I was obliged, in the early part of the running, to take an occasional pull at our colt to urge him on, merely to make him keep his place; but as I did not in any part of the race call severely on our colt to come, he pulled up fresh and well. The colt that won, and the one that was second, appeared to me, as they walked back to the scales, to have been at all they could do; and I am pretty certain, that, if they had much further to have gone, at the pace they were at in the run home, they must in some degree have come back to me; so that if our colt is not quite as fast as either of the other two, I am confident he is much stouter. Indeed, if you had not been so very anxious about the measurement of the five colts, I feel quite certain, that if I had made more use of our colt in the early part of the running, I could have won the race." The trainer, in reply to the jockey, says—"I have no doubt you could have won the race, but according to the running that was made by the other colts, you could

not have ridden ours in a more satisfactory manner, to please me, than you have done. For it certainly is of more consequence to us, to have taken the measurement we have of the other colts, than that our colt should have won the stakes, and that we afterwards should have been left in ignorance as to the company he had been running in, which in all probability would have been the case. For had you, in the early part of the race, gone out in front of them, and made the running with our colt, which you must have done to have won with him, you could not then have had so good an opportunity of seeing whether it was a true run race or not with the whole of the other colts, and as our colt was placed but a middling third, the public, if they think anything at all about him, will form rather a bad opinion of him." Thus concludes the conversation between the trainer and his jockey.

The yearling race being run, and the meeting concluded, our two horses and our two yearlings are on the following day travelled off to the home stable. This brings us to about the middle of April, at which time it will be advisable for us to lay by for a short time our two yearlings. The one we have so high an opinion of, and that has not run in public, we will get ready to turn out by putting him into a cool loose box, and gradually stripping him of his clothes. On the first of May, his shoes being taken off, his feet being properly cleaned out, and the lower edges of the crust rasped round, we will,

as we do not intend bringing him to post for some time, put him for a couple of months into a well-fenced paddock, in which there is a good supply of fine spring grass. In this paddock there is of course a water trough, and a well-ventilated loose house, in which the colt may shelter himself from any severity of the weather. The house is to be kept clean, and properly littered as occasion may require, under the superintendence of the groom or head lad; the colt we put here is to be regularly and plentifully fed with corn every day, by the boy who looks after him. He may also have daily, if he is inclined to eat it, some hay.

The yearling we have been running in public, we have described as being an idle, gluttonous colt, and, from the work he has been doing, he may be considered as being a little stale. But, as this colt is tolerably well engaged, and will have to come to post as a two-year old in the autumn, we cannot afford to lose more time in refreshing him than is absolutely necessary. Therefore, instead of turning him out into a paddock for a couple of months, we will take off his shoes, put his feet to rights, put some standing clothes on him, and turn him into a clean, ventilated, and constantly well-littered loose box; here, at the accustomed stable hours, he is to have his usual allowance of corn, to be wisped over, his mane and tail combed out, his legs rubbed, and due attention paid to his feet. For the first three weeks or a month of his remaining in this box, he

is to be plentifully fed on green food, as vetches, lucern, or clover grass. Those grasses, whichever may be used, should be cut daily, and a rubber full or two given every stable hour by the boy who looks after the colt. For what purposes green food is to be given to colts and horses, see Vol. I. Chap. V. p. 105.

In the last seven chapters, I have described how yearlings are to be taught, trained, tried, and run. If the whole of the practical observations here laid down are carefully attended to by the reader, in the management of his yearlings, according as their constitutions may vary, I have no hesitation in saying, that he will find his colts will, in every respect, progressively come into that state of condition in which they ought to be when brought out to run, in either their trials or races. If such yearlings be kind in their tempers, they will, if properly ridden, be capable of running honestly for the length they have to come, that is, as they are not very cunning at this early age, they will fairly shew what speed or stoutness they may each possess; unless, indeed, there are any very big ones among them, which may probably require more time to bring them into that fit state of condition, which will enable them to shew what racing powers they may have.

The two colts we just now placed in situations to get fresh, we shall return to bye-and-bye, when they are two years old. The whole of the subject, on the treatment of them as yearlings, is, therefore, concluded.

CHAPTER XXI.

HALF A DOZEN CRAVING HORSES DOING THEIR FIRST SWEAT EARLY IN MARCH.

Race horses that are hearty feeders, as I have already said, put up flesh very quickly, and, as they cannot run their best pace, when fat, but for a short length, it becomes necessary to reduce them, which is done by sweating them as often as occasion may require during the time of their being in training. A repetition of this sort of exercise may take place, with some horses, as often as three times a fortnight; with others, once a week; with others, once in ten days, a fortnight, or three weeks. There are some horses so very delicate, and have to run such short lengths, that they may not require a sweat during the whole time of their being in training.

How horses may have to sweat while in training, and the different methods to be adopted in getting them carefully and properly through their sweats, will, as I have elsewhere frequently mentioned, depend (as must all other things which are done unto them) on a variety of circumstances; as, for example, the ages of the horses, the strength of their constitutions, their manner of feeding, the state of

their condition, the season of the year, the state the ground may be in at the time, as that of its being very wet, having too much foot-hold, or otherwise, as being very dry and hard. The whole, or rather most of the above causes, will in the end have reference to the three following:—first, whether the horses are to sweat, principally, to get the flesh off them, and which takes place in the early stages of their training; secondly, the length of ground sufficient to get a good sweat out of them, which takes place when they are getting pretty forward in their training; thirdly, to go fast enough to bring them stout as to pace, and which must be near the time of their perfecting their condition. The very great extent to which it is frequently necessary to sweat some race horses, renders this sort of exercise the most severe of any they have to undergo.

On the ground which race horses are to sweat over, there is, of course, a rubbing-house, where the stables are not conveniently near, (but in the present instance we will consider them as being sufficiently near), at a suitable distance from where the horses may have to pull up. That there may be no very difficult turns on the ground, it should be of spacious dimensions, as of four, or at least two miles in circumference; and if it has a little degree of ascent and descent, I should prefer it to its being a dead flat; and further, if we had the power of selection, and such a ground could be found, I should choose one where the commencement was a level surface for the

first mile and a half, or two miles, where the ground is four miles in circumference, and then a gradual rise for half a mile, then descending for about the same distance, and then proceeding on along a level surface until within about half a mile of its conclusion ; in which latter part should be another very gradual ascent (similar to that of the finishing of some of our race grounds) to where the horses pull up. Why I wish the ground to vary a little is, that when the trainer is giving orders how his horses are to go in their sweats, he may direct the pace to be increased at those little ascents and descents, if he conceives it necessary; thus practising the horses on the different parts of this ground where it resembles the course they may have to run over with other horses in their engagements.

The different lengths horses will have to sweat will of course depend on their ages. A yearling may go in his sweat two miles; a two year old, two miles and a half; a three year old, three miles and a half; and a four year old, four miles; but if this latter colt should have to run four miles, and the season is somewhat advanced, he may occasionally come four miles and a half; a five or six year old may at times sweat five miles. Each of the above lengths will occasionally be varied, depending on the constitutions of the horses, and their condition, the state of the ground, the temperature of the air, and their ages as connected with the season of the year.

Having now made mention of some of the princi-

pal causes for the sweating of horses in training, and the effects it produces on them, as well also as having noticed the sort of ground, and the different lengths horses have to go in their sweats, I shall now proceed to state how the whole of the practical detail is to be carried into effect.

Horses, in commencing their training, sweat very readily; they should, therefore, go at a slow pace, and as they proceed on gradually in their different sweats, their bodies will be diminishing in weight; and while their legs will be increasing in strength, their muscular powers and wind will also at the same time be progressively improving. As woollen cloths are bad conductors of heat, they are consequently the most proper and convenient for the purpose of horses sweating in; and the quantity or number of them are to be increased by the directions of the training groom, according to the different effects he intends they are to produce. (For a description of different sorts of cloths, and their various uses, see Vol. I. Chap. 9.) The groom therefore orders the head lad, on the sweating morning, to lay out the proper quantity of sweaters behind each of the horses that are to sweat. Most horses that have been accustomed to be trained, and that have been habituated to sweat often, are more or less alarmed, or nervous, on their sweating days; they feel apparently conscious, from their having been set over-night or in the morning, that they will shortly have to undergo more than their usual

daily exertions, and which they immediately shew in various ways. On seeing their sweaters being brought into the stables, just before they are stripped to have them put on, some of the strong craving horses will stretch out either their legs or their carcasses, others empty their intestines or bladders, while some others, as the more delicate ones, may be seen trembling, and some may have a little palpitation of the heart. The first mentioned of these habits, the strong horses should be allowed quietly to perform, after which they soon become reconciled. The light, delicate horses do not get rid of their fears so readily as the stronger, they therefore require to be treated in the most kind and gentle manner possible at the time of their sweaters being put on; when they are clothed up, mounted, and ridden out on to the downs, their apprehensions generally go off.

The training groom will now, on opening the stables in the morning, proceed with the same arrangements as he did in the winter season before the horses began their training, with the addition of the preparatory matter of finishing the setting of those that may be going to sweat. Strong constitutioned horses, that may have to come to post at the end of March or beginning of April, will have to begin their sweats (if the weather is open) early in February. At this time, and, perhaps, even to the end of March, the mornings are seldom either fine or warm enough for the horses to sweat, until

after the boys have got their breakfasts. On the approach of summer, the horses sweat earlier; and, should it be excessively hot in the months of July and August, it will be necessary, to prevent the horses becoming jaded or languid by the heat, to sweat them in the cool of the morning, perhaps before the dew is off the grass.

Many of the horses that put up flesh quickly, will, as I have observed, have to sweat as often as three times a fortnight. Should the morning, on the days they have to sweat, be cool, it will be advisable to defer their sweating until the day is farther advanced, as nine or ten o'clock; it will be better to do this in the early stages of their condition, than afterwards, to produce the desired effect, to overload them with clothes, or hurry them in their pace. Horses that may only have to sweat once in a week or ten days require but little in the way of flesh (even in the early part of their training) to be taken off them; and, on approaching near to their best form, they are then only sent over the ground with a view merely to keep the length in them, and to clean their skins. Their clothing and pace should therefore be arranged by the groom accordingly.

We will now mention a few arrangements to be made on the morning horses have to sweat, no matter whether before or after breakfast. In the first place, the number of horses that are to sweat at one time must be regulated by the number of

boys there may be on the premises of any racing establishment; that is to say, when horses pull up from their sweats, there must be not less on such occasions than three boys to attend each horse; five to each would be a more proper number for the finishing of the horses quickly.

When there is not much to be done, and the mornings are not very hot, for the conveniency of shutting up all the stables at one time, the horses that do not sweat are occasionally left in, until those that have sweated are roughly dressed over and re-clothed. The first-mentioned horses are then got ready to exercise at the time those that sweated come out to take their sweating gallop.

When the sweating days of the different horses come round, the number that have to sweat may be gradually diminished. If eight or ten, or perhaps more, have to sweat on the same morning, they should be put into classes, or, if they have to sweat together in one class, care should be taken that all, as nearly as possible, require the same treatment. Should there be any material variation among them as to age or constitution, some artificial modes must be adopted to bring them as nearly as possible upon a par: as by increasing the quantity of clothing on those horses that may be rather high in flesh, and by clothing lightly or putting up lighter boys to ride on those that may want but little flesh coming off them, and by regulating the pace they are to go in favour of the young ones. If these precautions

are adopted, it is not likely that any thing wrong will take place.

In the clothing of horses that are going to sweat, there are two other things invariably to be observed: the one is, not to let the clothes be to such an extent in quantity as in any way to encumber the horse, so as to interfere with the pace he ought to go; the other, not to let the pace in the early stages of his condition be faster than is absolutely necessary to produce a good sweat from him.

Horses, in commencing their first sweats in spring, are all more or less unclean in their skins, and more particularly those of strong constitutions that may have been stripped and allowed to lie by in a loose box during the winter. There is an accumulation on the surface of those horses' bodies of an unctuous, scurfy, or dusty sort of substance, which, in the first two or three sweats, mixes with the perspiration, and causes the fluid scraped from the horses' bodies to be of a frothy, glutinous, greasy and unclean nature; and therefore, until these horses have sweated two or three times, I should recommend the oldest of the sweating clothes being used next their skins.

Horses, as they are improving in their condition, are more difficult to be got to sweat than at any other time. Whenever this is known to be the case, it becomes requisite, not only to make some little addition to the clothing of such horses, but also to increase the length of the sweating ground

for half a mile, or perhaps more; and if they are, which is mostly the case, strong-constitutioned horses, and are drawing near the time of finishing their training, the groom should order the boy who rides the horse that leads the sweat to increase the pace somewhat earlier in concluding the length of the ground, than is usual with other horses on more common occasions. It is of course to be understood, that whatever horses are to sweat, they have been previously prepared, that is to say, they have been set according to what they are. The muzzles have been put on some of them over-night, perhaps on some others very early in the morning.

We will now proceed to state the way in which horses are to be got ready that are going to sweat: and first as to the manner of putting on their sweating clothes. These, we have already observed, are ordered by the training groom to be laid out in sufficient portions behind each horse. The morning the horses are to sweat, as the hour approaches for them to undergo this exertion, the groom with a sufficient number of his boys, enters the stables, and each boy goes into the stall of the horse he looks after, and takes off his muzzle and collar; the horses then come round and have their bridles put on. When any thing is being done to a race horse, unless he is very vicious, the boy who looks after him is mostly the one appointed by the groom to take charge of his head. We will now suppose this boy to have hold of the reins of the bridle in each

hand, strained pretty tight, and to be standing at a convenient distance in front of his horse's head; while two boys, (one on each side), of more experience, are clothing the horse up for his sweat.

We will now state minutely the directions for putting on the sweating clothes of one horse, and which of course will answer for the clothing of any other; only observing this difference, that the quantity of clothing is either to be increased or diminished, according as the age, constitution, or condition of the horse may require. Being stripped of his standing clothes, the first part of the clothing to be put on him is his hood, which should be lined throughout with white serge; if it should be necessary to apply two, the first should be without ears. The hoods being put on, and tied under the horse's jaws and throat, the neck part of the hood is, for the moment, turned far enough back towards or over the horse's head, to admit the body sweater, (a white swan-skin sheet), which, being put on next his skin, should reach from the top of the horse's tail to half way up his neck. Towards the end, and on each side of the centre part of this cloth, there should be a small buckle on the one side, and a strap to meet it on the other, so that, when buckled, it may perfectly cover the neck, shoulders, and chest of the horse. To these clothes may be added one of the blanket-like sort of rugs; over this may be an old quarter piece; if the horse is very lusty, and is in the habit of putting up flesh

quickly, that is, if he is a difficult horse to keep in any thing like racing form, a second quarter piece may be added. These body clothes being put on, and the neck part of the hood turned back to its proper place, the cloth next to be applied is the breast sweater, the centre of it being placed on the centre of the chest of the horse. Each boy must lay the front part of the ends of the rug, the quarter pieces, and shoulders of the hoods, as smoothly over the shoulders of the horse as he can, previously to bringing the sides of the long sweating cloth up each side of the horse's shoulders to the top of his withers, where the ends of this cloth are to be crossed over, and continued as far back as they will go towards the horse's loins. The saddle, and, if requisite, a martingale, being put on, it may now be girthed up.

Previously to the horse going out of the stable the groom must see that the bottom part of the breast sweater is not too tight, this he is to ascertain by putting his hand up between it and the horse's chest; if it should be too tight, he has only to draw it sufficiently out at the bottom part, so as to give room for the free working of the points of the horse's shoulders. Unless this little precaution is taken, the horse's shoulders will become galled, from the friction occasioned by too much pressure of the breast sweater during the time the horse is galloping over the sweating ground, and more particularly so, should he be a delicate thin-skinned horse.

The old-fashioned long breast sweater might, I think, be advantageously done away with, and a less inconvenient one substituted; for example, I would recommend this sort of cloth to be made like a common breast cloth, with only this difference, that it should be much fuller, and lined with white serge or swan's skin; and instead of having two buckles at the top ends of this cloth, it would be better to have a buckle on the near end, and a strap on the off one, which can be passed through a loop that may be placed long ways on the top of the outside of the wither part of the old quarter piece, that is used outside of the other clothing the horse sweats in; and on each side, at about the middle part of the fore ends of this quarter piece, there should be fixed two straps to meet two buckles that are to be similarly placed on the centre or side ends of the breast cloth. These straps and buckles, thus fixed, will answer tolerably the purpose of keeping the other clothes in place, as well also as preventing the admission of air to the surface of the body of the horse as he is going along in his sweat. The advantage of a breast sweater being thus made is, that when the fore parts of the horse are to be scraped, this cloth can be more readily removed than the long breast sweater; for, in removing or pulling this cloth from under the saddle, the horse's body clothes are loosened, or indeed in some measure removed—a sort of thing which should not be allowed to take place, until the saddle and clothes

are all taken off at one time, for the horse's body to be instantly scraped. The old-fashioned long, narrow body-sweater being an inconvenient one to put on, has long since been dispensed with; and as the long narrow-breast one is quite as inconvenient to take off, I see no reason why this cloth might not give place to one similar to that I have been describing.

Having now described the manner of clothing horses in their sweats, we shall proceed to the sweating of them. It is to be understood, that the six horses we have taken for an example have all been in previous training, some for two, and others for three years; and that they have also been doing some little portion of work in their gallops, merely to clear their wind in a slight degree. We have noticed in the Chapter on Galloping Exercise, that, whenever the training groom wishes to do any thing particular with regard to the working of his horses, he puts up a boy to lead them in their work, who is a good judge of the pace of any horse he is riding; this boy, by the time he has become proficient in this part of his duty, will also have become acquainted with another very essential qualification, viz. to understand the brief manner, on various occasions, in which the groom, in a language rather peculiar to himself, gives his orders as to what pace he is to rate any class of horses in their work. Now, as this boy is very steady, and can ride well, he is, of course, of the greatest utility to the groom; and,

as we shall frequently have to make mention of him, that we may do so in as few words as possible, we will call him Thomas, or more familiarly, Tom. To this boy, or some other such one, or to the head lad, if the latter is sufficiently light, the groom will have, under a variety of circumstances, as he proceeds in the training of the horses, to give his orders. To give the reader a small specimen of our boy Tom coming into use, we will introduce a training groom giving to him the necessary orders as to how the six horses already clothed up are to go over the sweating ground. "Tom, you must mind what you are about this morning with these horses; it is their first sweat this season, and they are very lusty, and there is a good deal of foothold in the ground; be sure to take them steadily along, do not attempt to go any thing like half speed; just go as fast the whole of the way with your own horse as will bring the other horses into a slow even striding pace; if you rate them as I wish you, there will be no danger, lusty as they are, of any one horse going too fast for another." The groom, in speaking to the boys on the other horses, says—"Mind you keep fast hold of your horses' heads, and keep in your places as when you started, until you pull up."

The groom, on his hack, is to observe how his horses are going on in their sweats; he should also take care to be early enough on that part of the ground where the horses are to be pulled up. Having been pulled up, they may be let stand for a

moment to recover their wind a little; they should then be moved quickly on into the rubbing-house or stable. The boys having ridden the horses into the stalls here, and turned them about, dismount, and immediately slack their horses' girths, and take off their horses' boots. Each boy having moved a much of the bedding round the front of his horse as will prevent him from slipping about at the time of his being scraped, takes charge of his horse's head, in the same manner as he did at the time when the horses were being clothed up for their sweats; while the other boys, who were left behind to assist in getting the horses done, immediately put on to each horse (as directed by the groom) an additional portion of clothing, as hoods on their heads, and quarter pieces on their bodies, reaching back to the tops of their tails. By this additional clothing, the respiration of the horses is immediately increased to a very considerable extent. The stables being shut up, the heat of them soon becomes augmented, from the hot vapours arising from the surface of the horses, as well, also, as from their lungs. These circumstances, combined with the exertion the horses have just undergone, cause them to break out into a violent perspiration, which proceeds through the pores of their skins, in that well-known watery fluid called sweat. By this discharge of the superfluous fluids of their bodies, they are, what is called in the language of the stable, drawn fine, or stripped of their waste and spare flesh; or, more properly

speaking, are sufficiently lightened, both internally and externally, of their superabundant adipose membrane or fat.

By properly accomplishing of this object, we obtain a variety of others. First, we give free action to the muscular surface of our horse's body; secondly, we give the same to the internal organs, as those of his abdomen and thorax; thirdly, we give room for the circulation and respiration of the animal; which, with other proper treatment, in due time enables him to undergo great exertion, not only without endangering his constitution, but with comparative ease to himself; and even if the horse be in a plethoric state, and, after having gone over the sweating ground, the perspiration is encouraged to pass off from the surface of his body to the extent I shall presently speak of, he will be preserved from any inflammatory attacks, as that of fever or inflammation of his lungs.

How long the horses in question that have been over the sweating ground will have to stand breaking out under their additional clothing, must depend on circumstances. The time they may have to stand may be from five to ten or fifteen minutes, just according to how quickly the perspiration may begin to flow down their fore and hind quarters. While waiting for the horses to break out in their sweats, the various spare boys should be employed about each; one boy may untie the first and second string of the hood under the horse's jaw; and push-

ing the hood a little up, he may with a rubber, without annoying or interfering at all with the respiration of the horse, wipe quietly his face, eyes, and mouth, and between his jaws; while two others, after having taken off the horse's boots, may be engaged in quietly rubbing the legs with a little soft straw, by which the horse will be considerably refreshed.

The groom in the mean time is to be looking on, and as soon as he observes the sweat beginning to run down the extremities of his horses, he should pass his hand under each horse's clothes, and feel on the lower surface of their shoulders; and if, on drawing the back of his fore-finger with some degree of pressure down these parts, he finds the perspiration passing freely on before it, he may consider the horses to be in a proper state to be scraped. Having ascertained this point, he cautions the boys who are in charge of the horse's heads, to keep their reins strained, and to be sure to keep their eyes constantly fixed on those of the horses they are holding. He then directs the other boys (of whom there should be four to each horse—two to the fore quarters, and two to the hind) to untie the horses' hoods, and immediately to remove them and the breast sweaters; they are then quickly to turn the front and back part of the clothing over the horses' saddles. The boys now, with as little delay as possible, commence very quietly and steadily to scrape the necks and fore and hind quarters of the horses.

(For a description of the wooden instruments used on these occasions, see Vol. I. p. 194.) As soon as the horses are sufficiently scraped in those parts, which may be known from the sweat no longer passing on before the scrapers, they are to be wisped with soft dry straw; as the wisps get damp, they are, of course, to be changed. While the bigger boys, at the hind quarters of the horses, should take an opportunity, as directed by the groom, to wipe with their rubbers, as gently as possible, up between the inside and back part of the horses' thighs; and they should endeavour, also, by degrees, to do the same to their sheaths and testicles before the perspiration has dried on the surface of those parts. This I am aware, with some horses, is, at times, rather difficult, but much may be done, even with those that are refractory, by gentle usage and patient perseverance; by such means I have often succeeded. The fore and hind quarters of the horses being thus far forwarded, their saddles and body sweaters are taken off. Their bodies are then to be scraped and wisped as their quarters were.

It will now be advisable, (if there is ready in the stable a bucket of luke-warm water), just previously to the whole surface of their bodies being well wiped over with rubbers, to give each horse, out of a wooden bowl, two or three go-downs of water; this small portion of fluid is not only pleasingly grateful to their tastes, but moistens, lubricates, and cleanses their mouths and throats, and thereby relieves those

parts from that parched unpleasant feeling which has been occasioned by the great exertions they have undergone; and if their lips and nostrils are sponged and wiped dry with a linen rubber, they will afterwards feel much refreshed. Their bodies being now done, they are, to prevent them from becoming chilly or taking cold, to be clothed up in warm, dry, comfortable clothing, as soft blanket-like sort of rugs, next to their skins, with as much more of their other body clothes as may be necessary, according to the state of the weather and the delicacy of their constitutions. Their saddles and boots being again put on, and their manes and tails combed out, their hoods are to be put on; the boys that look after them now mount them, and ride them out of the stables on to the downs. If the morning is not cold, they may walk for a short time to stretch their legs; but should it be cold, the sooner they take their sweating gallop the better.

While the horses are out, the boys that are left in are immediately to throw open the doors and windows of the stables. The horses' beds are to be set fair, and their sweaters, which have just been used, are to be removed; if the weather is sufficiently fine, they are to be laid out on the rails round the back yard; but should the weather be unfavourable, they are to be taken to the boys' hall, and there placed on wooden horses before the fire: when thoroughly dried, they are to be rolled up, with the scrapers in them, and put away in the saddle-room.

For the convenient arrangement of these little affairs, see Vol. I. pp. 16, 20.

As this is their first sweat, and it having taken place early in the season, the weather is not likely to be warm; and as we do not wish to risk our horses catching cold, there will be no occasion for them to walk longer after they have taken their sweating gallop than will allow of their becoming sufficiently cool, or in such good state as to admit of their being thoroughly well dressed, without being disposed to break partially out into sweats. It is most likely, that their walking quietly down to the stables from where they pulled up at the end of their gallop will, as they have gone slowly in their sweats, answer the purpose of preventing them from breaking out into second sweats as above described.

Our horses having arrived in the stables, and turned round in their stalls, the boys as usual dismount, slack their horses' girths, take off their hoods and bridles, unbuckle the near side of their breast clothes, and turn them and the fore-part of their quarter pieces back over the horses' saddles. If the horses are kind in their tempers, they should now have laid before them a bit of hay to be picking at while their heads, necks, and fore quarters are being dressed. Those parts being done, and their manes and fore-tops combed out, the horses are turned round in their stalls; their muzzles being put on, their heads are chained up; their feet being picked out, their legs are now to be fomented in warm

water, up to just above their knees and hocks. This is a very necessary application to the legs of horses that may have been going very long lengths in either their sweats, trials, or races, and more particularly so, should the latter be heats severely contested for; warm water thus applied to those parts relaxes the vessels, and gives a free passage to the circulation of the blood, thereby allowing or aiding those parts to perform their proper functions. Their legs after being sponged dry should be bandaged up, from the coronets to the bending of the joints of their knees and hocks. Immediately previous to the horses being stripped of their saddles and body clothes, I would advise their water, rather warm, to be given to them. I am fully aware that this is rather against the old practice, but I will state why I recommend it, bye-and-bye.

The horses' bodies and hind quarters are now to be perfectly dressed; that they may not be kept too long stripped, there should be two boys employed about each horse, that is, if the tempers of the horses will allow of it; if not, the boy who looks after a bad-tempered horse had better quietly dress his own horse himself. The horses' bodies and hind quarters having been well dressed, they are to be comfortably re-clothed in their standing clothes; a hood having been thrown over their quarters, and their manes and tails combed out, their bandages are to be removed, and their legs well rubbed. The stables set fair, the horses are to be fed, hayed, and done up as the

other horses, which will most likely be at about one o'clock; it may be either a little earlier or later, depending on what time in the morning the horses in question began their sweats. Their quarters being stripped and their heads let down, the whole of the stables are now shut up until four, or perhaps five o'clock; for the horses at this season of the year, will only have to go out once during the day.

At whichever hour the stables are again opened, they are to be set fair, and the horses having been watered, their dressing muzzles are to be put on, and their heads chained up; they are then to be stripped, brushed over, and re-clothed, their legs rubbed, their beds set fair, the whole of them fed and hayed, and the stables again shut up until eight o'clock; at which hour they are again opened, the horses' heads being secured as usual, and the beds set fair.

To prevent my so often repeating that the horses' beds are to be set fair, suffice it to say, that the business of setting them fair is invariably to take place immediately on the stables being open, after the bales are taken down; and they are again to be set fair immediately after the horses are finished dressing. Any horse that from lying down may have displaced his clothes, should be stripped, wiped over, and re-clothed.

The manes and tails of all the horses being combed out, their legs rubbed, and their beds set fair, their muzzles are taken off, and their heads as usual let down to the end of the chain, and the whole of the

horses in the establishment are now to be fed. But they are not all to be fed alike. Those horses that have been sweating should have given to them a warm mash, of equal parts of scalded bran and oats, which have in due time been got ready, and have been allowed to stand covered up in buckets until cool enough to use. Those horses that are rather light in their carcasses will require but a small portion of mash, say a couple of wooden bowls full; (see the dimensions of this bowl in Vol. I. p. 40). But the horses of strong constitutions, and that are apt to be costive, and some of them are more particularly so after sweating, should have four bowls full of mash. As soon as these horses have eaten their mashes, and the others their corn, their hay is to be given them; and their heads being unchained, their quarters are stripped. The boys having had their suppers in the early part of the evening, now let down the bed settles, make their beds, undress themselves, and go to bed. The lights are to be put out by the groom or head lad, and the stables at about nine o'clock are locked up until the next morning.

I wish, previous to my concluding this chapter, to make some few remarks on the advantages and disadvantages of applying bandages to the legs of horses in training. It was not the custom at the time of my juvenile days, in the stables, to make use of bandages about the legs of race horses, unless in case of their being amiss on their legs; woollen bandages are, under those circumstances, if immersed

in proper fluids, of the greatest utility. Why I have recommended them to be applied to the legs of horses, after they have been sweated, is merely for the purpose of drying their legs quickly; they should be put on in the way I have already directed; but they are not to remain on longer than while their bodies are being dressed after long sweats or severely contested races; and more particularly are they useful in case of horses having run heats of two or four miles. On no other occasions than those just mentioned are bandages to be used about the legs of horses, (diseased legs being excepted); nor should they remain on for a longer period than I have advised; if they were allowed to remain on all night, the probability is, that the groom would be led into error. For, as it is an invariable rule with him, or at least it should be, the first thing in the morning to examine the legs of those horses that may have sweated the day previous, if the bandages remained on, their legs would most likely be found perfectly fine, although perhaps one or other of a horse's legs or fetlock joints may have received an injury—on the tendons of the former, or ligaments of the latter—neither of which injuries may be visible on examination, as the bandages, being left on up to the period above-mentioned, would from heat, and a certain degree of pressure, act somewhat upon the principle of fomentations and poultices, in preventing the natural enlargement that would otherwise arise from an injury done to any part;

and thus, as I have before observed, the groom would be led astray. But, if the bandages are taken off the horses' legs immediately after their bodies are dressed, there will be time by the next morning for any part of a leg injured to become enlarged by inflammation. The groom, on examining his horses' legs in the morning, if he observes the leg or joint of any one of them to be out of shape, immediately stops his work. But, on the other hand, if the bandages are continued on during the night, and the groom in the morning, on examining his horses' legs, finds them clean and in shape, he, very naturally, would take his horses out to go on with their usual exercise ; the consequence of this would be, that a horse, which may previously have injured one of his legs in going along in his sweat, would now, by taking his gallop, make it much worse ; in all probability the horse would pull up lame. This sort of thing happening to a horse near the time of his running, would of course do away with his race.

CHAPTER XXII.

SWEATING CONTINUED.

In the last chapter I endeavoured to enumerate the practical details in giving horses their first sweat in the early part of the season, and which are also to be observed in the sweating of almost all horses while in training; during which time, unless they should be unwell, they must not miss a single sweat; but the number of sweating days, and the intervals between each, must be regulated, as we have already stated, by the constitution of the horse. But as horses are getting into condition, (and more particularly so as they approach the time of their running), some little alterations must progressively take place, as to the length and pace they will have to go in their sweats; and there will also be some little precautionary measures to be observed in the treatment of them afterwards.

After giving horses their first sweat, and when the stables are sufficiently adjacent to the training ground, they should be immediately taken into them, to be scraped and dressed. But as it more frequently happens that the stables are at an inconvenient distance from the sweating ground, which is the case even at Newmarket, with the exception of a stable or two at the west end of the town, they

must be taken into the rubbing-house on the downs, to be got done, after they have gone through their sweats. On such occasions some little previous arrangements must be made, as taking there a change of dry clothes, with scrapers, straw, and rubbers. The number and quantity of the articles to be taken to the rubbing-house will depend on circumstances, as the number of horses that are going to sweat, and the season of the year; if early in the spring, and the weather cold, more dry clothes would be wanted than in summer.

The usual way of packing up the dry clothes is, by doubling up the spare clothes a convenient length, so as to admit of their being rolled snugly up inside the quarter pieces spread for the purpose, which latter are to be tied round their ends with rubbers; and whatever straw may be wanted, for wisping the horses, may be tied up in rubbers, which the spare boys, who go up to help to get the horses done, can carry with them, as also the scrapers. But in the spring of the year, when there may be more dry clothes wanted than the boys could conveniently carry, the better way would be to take them up on a hack, or, if there be a colt or two in breaking, they might be strapped on to the saddles, and carried up by the colts: the same course is to be adopted in taking the sweaters back to the stables. They should then be immediately unrolled and put to dry on the rails in the centre paddock in the rear of the stables; or, if the weather

will not allow of their being dried here, they are to be put before the fire in the boys' hall, as we have already stated in the preceding chapter.

We now proceed to speak again on the subject of sweating different horses, under the various circumstances in which they may be required to undergo that operation throughout the whole of their training. We will first notice the horses of light, delicate constitutions. As these are very irritable and flighty in their tempers, and will not bear much exercise of any sort, (as we have already noticed), but as, on the other hand, they are mostly in good wind, nor, generally speaking, are they disposed to put up flesh to any very great extent, there is therefore the less to come off them, be their ages what they may. There are two motives for sending these light horses over the sweating ground; the principal one is, to get something like a length into them, so as to bring them a little stouter for the distance they have to come in their races; the other is, that clothing them up when they come into the stable or rubbing-house causes them to sweat sufficiently to relieve their constitutions, and the scraping tolerably well cleanses their skins, and makes them afterwards appear fine and glossy in their coats.

Some of these horses may have to go over the sweating ground once in a fortnight, others once in three weeks, others not during the whole time they are in training. The commencing their sweats will depend much on the month in which their engage-

ments are to take place: if in the beginning of April, they will have to sweat early in the spring, and after breakfast, the mornings then being generally cold; but if their engagements are later, they will not be required to sweat before the season is more advanced, and the mornings warmer, in which case they would take their sweats before breakfast.

The precautionary measures to be adopted, as to how they are to sweat, must of course be determined by the good sense of the training groom; having had the horses in question for some time under his care, he is supposed to know their tempers, and has previously arranged proper boys to ride them. He will probably say to himself, and which is most likely to be true, that such a horse of the above description will perhaps go more peaceably over the sweating ground alone, than in company with others; and should this be the case, the horse is of course to be allowed to do so. If the morning is cold, the horse may be moderately clothed; but if it is warm, he may go in a single light quarter-piece breast cloth and hood; or, should it be in the middle of summer, and the morning hot, he may go stripped. These little arrangements must very much depend on the horse's temper, as must also the orders given to the boy how he is to ride him. If the boy who looks after the horse is a good rider and kind in his temper, and has always been on good terms with his horse, he may be the most proper one to ride him in his sweat. But if the groom has any doubt in his

mind as to the capability of the above boy to ride the horse as he could wish, he had better put up one of the six named in the chapter on the Instruction of Boys in Riding.

The description of horses we are now alluding to require little or no preparation in the way of setting; walking them out on the downs for a short time, merely to allow them to stretch their legs and empty themselves, (which latter they very readily do), is almost all that is necessary. But the groom must observe that the length any horse has to sweat is to be regulated according to his age, (which has already been noticed in the preceding chapter on Horses doing their first Sweat, p. 220.)

We will now mention the necessary orders to be given, as to how we wish this sort of horse to be managed by the boy who is to ride him over the sweating ground, and which ground may, perhaps, be a four-mile course. The groom may, either in the stables, or as he is going with the horse and boy to the course, speak to the latter much in the following way—"Frank, you must mind to sit very still on your horse, and let him go off as he likes, only endeavour as soon as you can, and in as quiet a way as possible, to get an easy steady pull at him; the sort of pull, you know, must be with that degree of strength which will best answer to keep him, while he is going along, as collected in his stride as you can; and as soon as you find you have done this to your wish, should you feel him getting at all

anxious to increase his pace, speak softly and kindly to him, and endeavour now and then gently to give and take with your reins to keep his mouth alive, so that, if you find it necessary to draw on him quietly, you may the more readily do so, with a view to keep him striding quietly along the whole of the way home to the passing of the rubbing-house. (See the situation of the Rubbing House, in Plate the 3rd, Vol. I.) After which, give him a sufficient length of ground to be pulled up on, and give and take with your reins in pulling him up, until he feels inclined to stop almost of his own accord. Be sure you do not pull rashly or suddenly at him, with a view to stop him in a short length; if you do you will alarm him—a thing, of all others, you know, we wish to avoid." (For further instructions on the riding of this sort of horse, see Vol. I. Chap. 18.)

The horse having been pulled up, and let stand just for a moment to recover his wind, is to be walked back into the rubbing-house. The boy, having turned his horse round in the stall, dismounts, slacks his horse's girth, and then takes charge of his head. As there is no necessity for reducing the muscular surface of a horse of this description, (he having but a short length to run), he may, if the morning is warm, have been sent over the ground very lightly clothed, or perhaps stripped: be this as it may, it will be necessary, on his coming into the stall of the rubbing-house, to throw an additional portion of clothes on him, to produce a sufficient degree of

perspiration to relieve his constitution, or rather to prevent any bad effects from arising—fever or inflammation. This is a circumstance which grooms should particularly attend to with all horses when sweating, and more particularly in their first sweats; for, although I have directed, in the preceding chapter, that they are to go slow in their first sweats, it is still necessary that they should be made to sweat profusely when standing in their stalls under their additional clothing; and for this reason, that when horses in training begin their sweats, they are not only fat on the surface of their bodies, but they are also very fat in their insides; and consequently in this state they are more liable to become constitutionally diseased from exertion, unless, as I have observed, they are allowed to sweat in the stables to the extent I have already noticed.

If the precautions in sweating horses in the stalls of the stables or rubbing-houses are adopted as I have advised, there will be no occasion for grooms to bleed their horses after their first sweats, as was formerly too much the custom, for fear that they should take cold, and be heard coughing on the following day. After the horse we have sweated has been scraped and dressed, he is to be comfortably re-clothed, agreeably to the state of the weather, and ridden out on to the downs, where he should take a short quiet gallop; and on being pulled up he is to be walked about for an hour, if it is a fine pleasant morning, to give him an appetite for his

food. Should he have been a little alarmed by the exertion he has undergone, the boy who rides him may, by speaking kindly to him, and making much of him, clapping him on the neck and fondling him, remove his fears. This is so very important a point to gain, that no trouble should be thought too much to produce a good temper in a light, delicate race horse.

We now come to the sweating of the horses of the second class, which we have termed the hearty ones. The sweating of them will also depend upon their constitutions. Some of them may require to sweat once a week, others once in eight days, and others once in nine; and it may occasionally be necessary to deviate from these periods, depending entirely on the effects produced upon them by their sweats. Some of them, that are more delicate than others, may not require more than four or five sweats during the whole time they are in training, while others may have eight, nine, or ten sweats within the same period.

As few horses of this class will bear being drawn fine, that is, having their muscular surface much reduced, and more particularly those of them that are young, as the two and three year olds, it becomes highly necessary that the greatest attention should be paid to them on the part of the training groom; —he is to bear in mind that all horses on beginning their sweats are to go slow in them; he must observe in due time what effect a first or second sweat may

produce on each, and afterwards in their other sweats regulate their clothing accordingly ; and, if he sees it requisite, make their days of sweating more or less frequent. Should a horse in this class be more flighty than any of the others, that is, if he should be of too irritable a temper, such a horse, like those of the first class, should sweat by himself. How many horses of the second class may sweat together, will of course depend on the number there may be in training, and how often the sweating days of each may come round, which is to be arranged by the groom according to the conclusions he draws from the points to which I have directed his attention. But, be the number what they may, as six, eight, or ten, as soon as they are pulled up at the end of their sweats, they are to be allowed to stand a moment or two, that they may blow their noses ; they are then to be moved rather quickly on to the rubbing-house. On their being turned round in their stalls here, the boys are to dismount and slack their girths ; and, as I have elsewhere observed, their additional clothes are to be thrown over them. They are then to be allowed to stand blowing (with a boy at each horse's head) until they are in a fit state to be scraped, the mode of doing which I have described in the preceding chapter. Horses are said to scrape well when the perspiration is observed to pass on before the scrapers in a sufficient, or rather a considerable quantity, from the whole surface of their bodies.

As soon as they are scraped, and rubbed perfectly dry, they are to be wiped over with rubbers, and, being comfortably re-clothed and saddled, they are to be ridden out on to the downs to take their gallops, and afterwards walked about till the time arrives for them to go into the stables to be well dressed and done up with the other horses.

Before we proceed to the sweating of the third class, it may not be out of place here to make some further remarks on the tempers and dispositions of thorough-bred horses that are in training; for those of my readers who may not have become familiar with such horses early in life, or who may not have made them their particular study, can have but very confined ideas of the sagacity and resolution some of these animals possess. Those of the first class are timid and easily alarmed at mere trifles; this may be considered as a constitutional infirmity, and as proceeding from nervous irritability; they, therefore, require (as we have already observed) kind and gentle treatment. Of the second class, the hearty horses, if I may be allowed thus to express myself, are more courageous, that is, they are not so easily alarmed by trifling circumstances, and when out at exercise they are playful and full of their gambols; nor, with but few exceptions, have I found them much addicted to vice, either in or out of the stables. The horses of the third class, which consist of those of strong constitutions, of course differ in their tempers; some of them are

quiet, others are disposed, in the stables and rubbing-house, to be vicious, and, speaking of them generally, they are almost all inclined to be idle or sluggish at exercise, requiring great perseverance to get them along in their gallops and sweats; at least such was my experience of them in my juvenile days.

As the horses of this class are very great feeders, they put up flesh quickly, and the consequence of this is, that a groom is obliged to give them a great deal of work. They have, therefore, frequently to go long gallops, and many of them have to sweat at least three times a fortnight. I have known some, from having to undergo great exertions in this way, to get sulky with their work; and, when they do, it is extremely difficult to make them keep straight on with the pace it may be necessary they should go in their exercise; they lurch or swerve, or they will, in spite of the boy's exertions, slacken their pace, and then suddenly run right out from the straight course in which it was intended they should have gone. A horse that does this is said, in the language of the turf, "to have shut up and gone out."

Whatever habits, as to vice or tricks, horses may be addicted to, it has been thought, by most of those who have had the care of them, that they are hereditary in them, and I am myself much of this opinion; notwithstanding, I do not think that it is by any means the natural disposition of horses to be

vicious, if well and kindly treated. Horses of the description we are now alluding to must in times back have undergone as great and repeated exertions in their training, to have brought them out in a fit state to run, as the same description of horses have to do at the present day; and it was most likely, from the mismanagement of people in former times, who had the care of such horses, that their tempers have been totally spoiled; and whatever habits of vice were thus acquired, they have occasionally transmitted them to their progeny. To this source I attribute the disposition to vice so frequently observable in the craving horses while in training; and let me here observe, that such horses are never more disposed to shew their bad dispositions than at the time of their being scraped or dressed in the stables or rubbing-houses, after being sweated.

As we have already noticed, with regard to the first and second classes, as soon as they are pulled up from their sweats, they are to be ridden into the rubbing-house, where they are turned round in the stalls; their girths being slacked, and their additional clothes thrown on them, they are then allowed to stand to blow for the usual period, or until they are fit to be scraped.

It was the custom in my time to select the smallest of the boys to take charge of each horse's head. This was done by the groom for the purpose of having the bigger boys to work at the horses in scraping, wiping, and finishing them after their

sweats; and such an arrangement is proper enough, provided all the horses are kind in their tempers. But should there be, among a number of horses that may have sweated, one or two having a propensity to vice, the small boys ought never in such a case to be allowed to take charge of the heads of such horses at the time of their being scraped, as accidents might probably occur, not to the horses, but to the boys, in consequence of their not having sufficient strength to keep the reins of the bridles wide apart and firmly strained, which is at all times absolutely necessary, but more particularly so in the present case, to prevent these horses from forcing themselves on too near to the boys, when, if they have become irritated from scraping, they will watch for their opportunity to seize them. Accidents of this sort will occasionally occur from the mismanagement of the groom, either in not giving proper orders on such occasions, or by putting boys of insufficient strength to hold the heads of such horses as are disposed to vice. By way of example, I will here mention an instance that occurred when I was an exercise boy:—I had been riding my horse, which was very vicious, in his sweat, and, on his being pulled up to be scraped, the groom ordered a little boy that had lately come into the stables to take charge of my horse's head. I knew the disposition of my horse well, and had my doubts of the capability of the boy, as regarded both his strength and knowledge, and was afraid of what

might happen; nor was it long before my fears became realized, for we had scarcely begun to scrape the neck and fore quarters of the horse in question, when he seized the poor boy by the upper part of the arm, and, raising his head at the same time, he drew the little fellow off the ground, and with apparent contempt threw him from him. The groom then ordered me to take charge of my horse's head myself, which is what he ought to have done at first. I repeat, that a small boy should never be entrusted to hold any horse's head disposed to be vicious, at the time he is going to be scraped. Other accidents similar to the one just described often occur where the small boys are imprudently selected, and cause their being laid by for some time; which was the case in the instance above alluded to.

The manner of dressing race horses in the stables daily, and particularly those that are vicious, has already been noticed in Vol. I. Chap. 14. But there are a few other rules to be attended to in regard to the management of thorough-bred horses, and which are also applicable to almost all other horses of courage. Now, there is a kind of familiarity with which all horses should be treated, but this must not be carried to too great an extent; they should on no account be played with, as they will be found to be rather rough playfellows, and by making too free with them, they are apt to become tricky. Thorough-bred horses while in training should be kept by those who look after

them at a respectful distance. The boys, as I have before noticed, should on no pretence be trusted alone with them, whenever any thing is to be done to them that is likely to annoy them, as particularly the scraping them after their sweats. The boys on these occasions have not at all times sufficient patience; and those who do not possess too much of this virtue are apt to be too handy in applying their scrapers to an improper use, in striking the horses with them, if they are not narrowly watched, either by the training groom or head lad. If a horse's mane is thick and long, a boy may be permitted to strike the sweat out of it; but beyond this he should never be allowed to strike a horse with a scraper, or indeed with any thing else, more particularly should the horse be disposed to vice; for such a horse will sometimes wait for an opportunity to resent such unfair treatment.

As horses go progressively on with their sweats, some of them, towards the conclusion of their condition, draw rather fine or thin, from being stripped of what is commonly called their waste and spare, by which their bones become more exposed to the pressure of the scraper when it is applied to them after their sweats, and this causes many of them on such occasions to be extremely irritable. However, if there is any danger to be apprehended from the scraping of a vicious horse after his sweat, the best way is to get his head and neck done first, and then turn him round in his stall; put on his collar and

muzzle, and, having chained up his head, get his quarters and body done as we have already directed, the groom being particularly careful that the boys do not give more pressure to their scrapers than is absolutely necessary to remove the sweat from the surface of the horse's body.

By taking the above precautions in not irritating a vicious horse more than can possibly be avoided, and if the plan of turning him round and securing his head be adopted, he will be deprived of much of the powerful advantage he would otherwise have in being held by a boy alone. Notwithstanding the savage disposition of some horses, yet, generally speaking, most of them, as I have elsewhere noticed, if properly treated, appear to be more inclined to shew kindness towards us than otherwise; even a vicious horse seems to attach himself to, or make a favourite of, the boy who looks after him. I speak here from a tolerable share of experience. The former is seldom known to injure the latter, unless indeed the boy should be so churlishly rash as unprovokedly to insult him by unnecessarily striking him. As a proof of what I have here stated, the vicious horse I looked after, and which I described as seizing the boy by the arm that was put to hold him while being scraped, I was once travelling with alone, and I well remember being tired of sitting on his back as he walked along. I got down, leaving him loose with the reins on his neck. I moved a little in front of him, and then spoke to him to

follow me, which he did very quietly for about a couple of miles, on a public road, where vehicles of different descriptions were frequently passing and repassing. I confess what I did was very wrong, but I was very young at the time, and knew no better. I have merely mentioned this circumstance by way of example, and, indeed, I could state a variety of others equally thoughtless and neglectful; but the one I have here given may suffice to shew how very incorrect it would be in any groom to intrust a valuable horse to the entire care of a young, thoughtless, inexperienced boy. I confess I have made a long digression from the subject with which I began this chapter; I have done so merely to give my readers such necessary hints as I hope will guard them against any negligent sort of errors, which might, if allowed to take place, be the cause of serious inconveniences or accidents occurring among the horses.

Let us now return to the sweating of the third class of horses. In the preceding chapter on this subject, we described six horses doing their first sweat in the early part of the season, and we stated that a difference of a week or ten days would perhaps take place in the sweating days of different horses; the period when these days may come round depending upon their constitutions. But the six horses we are now about to sweat are very nearly alike as to their constitutional properties; and therefore they will all have to sweat within a day or two

of each other, some of them sweating three times a fortnight, others once in six days. Be this as it may, the groom is at all times to endeavour to arrange the sweating of this class of horses so as not to have any one of them sweat alone; that is, there should be a horse of the second class, who may be kind in his temper and wanting a sweat, to lead any idle horse of this third class that would otherwise have to sweat alone, his sweating day coming round oftener than that of the four or five others of the same class, whose constitutions are not quite so strong.

Now, as the class of horses in question proceed in their sweats, the various changes produced by them will be readily observed in each horse. Some of them will of course undergo much greater changes than others: one boy finds, in buckling on his horse's body-clothes when he is done after the sweat, that his roller buckles up a hole tighter; another boy finds in doing the same thing, that his horse's roller buckles up two holes tighter. Thus, as these horses proceed on with their sweats, so in proportion will the whole surface of their bodies have become more or less diminished. The groom, therefore, after his horses have come in from taking their sweating-gallop, must, just previous to their being clothed up, observe how each horse may have become affected by his first two or three sweats, and, indeed, by every sweat, but particularly by the first two or three, as it is from the effects produced on

them by these he must arrange the different intervals of time that each horse will have between one sweating day and the other, as well as the quantity of clothing he will require.

The groom being fully aware of the lusty state his horses were in before they began their sweats, must now steadily watch the changes their sweats produce on them. He is to go up into the stalls of each of his horses, previously (as I have just observed) to their being clothed up; on these occasions he is not only to look them well over, but he must feel and handle them in such parts as are likely to guide him as to how each horse may have become affected by his sweats. He should first feel the crest of his horses, to ascertain how they handle in those parts as to substance and firmness, and whether it will be necessary to make the addition of another hood in the next sweat, or to remove the thick sweating hood for a lighter one, which may answer the purpose better; this will depend on whether a horse has a thick high crest, or a low thin one. Having examined the neck and crest, he should pass his hand from the top of the withers down the muscular part of the shoulder to the top of the fore-arm, and then round the front of the muscles of the chest, and here ascertain whether the horse is light, or too much loaded with flesh about those parts; then, placing his hand on the centre and posterior part of the shoulder, he should give it that degree of pressure which may be necessary to imbed it, as

it were, in or on a level with the muscles here; and then, with the same degree of pressure, he should pass his hand straight along the centre of the ribs to the centre of the horse's flank, a little below his hip; in doing this he is to observe what height, portion, or substance of muscles goes before his hand, as he passes it along. Having ascertained the state and portion of muscle here, the groom is next to examine the muscular substance and firmness of his horse's loins: which parts ought to feel hard, firm, and springy. In proceeding on, he is next to bring his hand to the top of the horse's quarters, that space between the hip and the setting on of the horse's tail, and examine carefully what alteration may have taken place in those parts, as whether the muscles of the posterior part of the quarters, which extend from the croop down to the haunches or lower parts of the horse's thighs, are gradually beginning to shew themselves, by the depth of the cavity which divides them, and which is so well marked in all thorough-bred horses, as they are progressively getting into their best form or condition. Those muscles, like almost all others on the surface of the animal's body, should appear distinctly divided, with a plump swell or bulk in the belly part of them.

The method I have here described, of examining or handling horses in training, to ascertain how they are going on in their condition, is an old-fashioned one I allow; yet it is the best with which I am ac-

quainted ; and it is one I would strongly recommend grooms strictly to adhere to, while their horses are proceeding with their work, and particularly their sweats. According as the horses become affected by the latter, as in suddenly drawing too fine, or not drawing sufficiently fine or thin, agreeably to their ages and constitutions, or the length they have to run, the groom is to increase or diminish the number of sweaters, and regulate the intervals of time between the sweating days of different horses, as occasion may require, after the examinations he may have made.

Having set them over-night, we will now proceed to sweat half a dozen of the craving sort of horses, the arrangements for which will be much the same as for the like number of horses that went through their first sweat, in the preceding chapter on this subject. But as these have made some progress in their condition, there must therefore be a few alterations made in the orders given by the groom as to how they are to be ridden in their sweats; for having now become somewhat more settled in their stride, and their wind being also improved, they are better able to maintain a certain pace in going over the sweating ground ; consequently, they must have boys upon them of sufficient power to hold them as they are going along, and to keep them collected and steady in their places; for it is not because this class of horses have a little improved, and are more capable of going a better pace in their sweats,

that they should be allowed at the present time to do so.

Let us suppose the horses in question to be clothed up for their sweats, and proper boys put up to ride them, (let us say, for example, the six boys already mentioned, as being in the groom's confidence). The groom will thus briefly give his orders to the boy on the horse that leads—"Frank, keep fast your horse's head, and mind you do not hurry them; come with them the whole of the way, (say four miles), at a slow, fair, and even sweating pace." The orders to the other boys are, to hold fast their horses' heads, and mind to keep their places.

The horses having come over the ground, and pulled up, they are ridden into the rubbing-house, their additional clothes being thrown on them, and the other little matters arranged. The groom is now to observe how kindly or freely the sweat may flow from each of them, for they may not all sweat exactly alike; there may be a couple of hardy horses that may not sweat sufficiently; these will require to be differently treated; and if so, it will be proper they should, on the next sweating day, sweat by themselves.

Let us therefore, by way of example, say that the six horses, that have just come in from their sweats, have been scraped, roughly dressed, reclothed in their dry clothes, have taken their sweating gallop, and, having walked the usual time, are ridden into their stables; here they are well dressed, and shut

up with the other horses. I have stated my directions on shutting them up after their sweats rather briefly, without noticing how they are to be watered and fed; but we will take another opportunity of mentioning these matters.

Let us suppose the day to have come round for the sweating of the two hardy horses just mentioned, which did not sweat sufficiently well on the day they sweated with the six horses above alluded to. The two horses being set over night, in the morning are to be clothed for their sweats rather differently to what they were before; their sweaters or clothes, are to be increased in number or quantity to the extent of four or five times double; and, that they may be of as little incumbrance to the horses as possible, they should be snugly and well put on, commencing from the upper part of the horse's neck, covering his chest, and extending along to the setting on of his tail. In addition to the sweating hood, if thought necessary, a second one (such as is used on common occasions) should be added; and when a horse is thus heavily clothed, the old fashioned long breast sweater may be put on, which appears to be very well adapted for excluding the admission of air, by keeping the clothes well in place over the shoulders and chest of the horse. To aid the effects of this additional clothing we have just put on the horses, we can, if we think it necessary, give them a good short steady gallop to set them on their legs and warm them a little. In addition to

this gallop, we must, if the horses are four or five years old, increase the length of their sweats to very near or quite the extent of five miles. But, as our two horses are heavily clothed, and the length of ground increased, that nothing may happen to their legs, the best riding boys of the lightest weights should be put up to ride them; and if there be one, a better or more patient rider than any of the others already mentioned, he should be put up on the present occasion to lead the sweat. We will give him the name of Bill; and the boy put up to ride the second horse we will call Tom. The groom, in giving his orders, cautions the boy as to the length of ground the horses are to come in their sweats. He says—"Bill, you must mind you are going a long length this morning with these horses, and you know they are heavily clothed, be sure you keep a steady pull on your own horse; look well before you, so as to keep clear of any small hillocks or uneven parts of ground, that we may have no accident happen to a leg of either of them: be sure you do not hurry them. Rate your own horse at a steady sort of stride, and don't forget to keep him collected, and as well within himself as you can; you must not on any account attempt to draw him out now with a view to finish the concluding part of the ground at the usual sweating pace; just keep him the whole of the length at the fair even pace with which I have told you to begin. And, Tom, mind that you follow Bill steadily; keep your place; be

sure you don't let your horse lay out of his ground."

The horses, having gone over the sweating ground and pulled up, are turned about and ridden immediately into the stalls of the rubbing-house; being here turned round, the boys dismount, and as usual slack the girths. The groom is directly to order what portion of clothes he is of opinion is necessary to be thrown on them, according to the effects he may have observed to have been produced by the increased quantity of sweaters, together with the additional length of ground they had to come in their sweats. The criterion by which he must be guided in regulating the quantity of clothes his horses will have to sweat in in future, is the readiness with which the perspiration may begin to flow down the fore and hind extremities of the horses.

Should it appear that the horses have not sweated sufficiently from the additional clothes and the increased length of ground, I would recommend, on their next sweating day, adding to the former in preference to increasing the latter; for, in adding to the length of ground when horses are heavy in themselves and heavily clothed, they are more liable to become leg-weary, and it may then happen that a leg of one or the other of the horses in question may get amiss.

The horses having been scraped in the rubbing-house, during the time of their being roughly dressed (that they may dry kindly and not break

out into a second sort of sweat) should in due time be gradually cooled by throwing open the ventilating apertures or windows. The boys, having done rubbing their horses, are to re-clothe them in their dry clothing, according to the season of the year; their saddles being put on, they are to be sent out to take their sweating gallop, after which they go to walking exercise for the usual or sufficient time. They are then ridden into the stables; here they are to be well dressed, and, being carefully watered and fed, they are to remain in during the day.

Having now noticed the different ways of horses being sweated, at least as far as we can do so for the present, we will leave them for a short time; but of course, considering them to be going quietly on with their gallops and sweats as directed: and if these matters are properly regulated agreeably to the different constitutions of different horses, they will, when we return again to them, have got rid of much of their superfluous flesh. Their bodies will have diminished in weight, while their legs, from the action they have had, will have increased in strength; and this is the state in which we wish to find them. After having examined them as to what improvements they have made, we shall want to be doing what is called a bit of strong work with some of them; that is, we shall have to send them along in their gallops and sweats, bye-and-bye, at rather a better pace than we have hitherto done for a certain time previous to their coming to post.

CHAPTER XXIII.

TRAINING OF TWO-YEAR OLDS.

We have appropriated seven chapters to describing the manner of teaching, physicking, training, sweating, trying, and running of yearlings, because they are sometimes taken up from their paddocks at this early age to be tried in private, and even to run in public. These trials and races are often solely with a view to ascertain what the colts are, so as to keep those that are very promising, and, to save expense, by disposing of those that are not likely to become racers.

Should the colts we are now about to train not be taken up from their paddocks until they are two years old, they will have to be treated in all respects as the yearlings were: we therefore refer the reader to the last chapter in Vol. I. on the Breaking of Yearlings; and to the three first chapters in our second volume, on Teaching, Physicking, and Training them.

As it will be necessary to adopt the same sort of treatment with the two-year olds as with the year-

lings, only allowing for the difference of their year, we will not recapitulate what we have already stated, but confine our observations to the alterations in treatment consequent upon their being a year older. First, as to the physicking of the colts in question: the same course is to be adopted as with yearlings, with this exception only, that the aloes may be increased in quantity a drachm or a drachm and a half in each dose, for the strong-constitutioned colts of the first class. But to those of the second class, as the hearty ones, an additional drachm only should be given. As we shall want six clear weeks for the further teaching as well as training of the first class colts, they should have their two or three doses of physic through them by the middle or end of January, depending on when they have to come to post, whether in the middle of March or the beginning or end of April. With these, as with the yearlings, it is always better to keep a dose or two in reserve, in case of its being necessary to give a third or last dose to any of them after the first sweat.

As the colts of the second class, the hearty ones, do not require so much work in training as those of the first class, it is not necessary to physic to the same extent; a couple of doses is generally sufficient for them, and which may be given at the end of January, as we shall not want more than a clear month for getting these colts ready to run. The colts of the third class, as the flighty ones, will not

be in much want of either physic or work ; the plan with them is, as we have observed, to let them have such exercise as will give them an appetite for their food, taking care not to do any thing with them that will be likely to put them out of temper ; and if some among them will stand any thing in the shape of work, the better way will be to steal it into them, if I may thus express myself. This is all we shall at present say about the third class.

Having finished our directions, at least for the present, on physicking our two-year olds, and considering that they have also been forwarded as directed in the third chapter on training yearlings, it is now to be supposed that they are ready to commence their gallops. A description of the length of these, and the pace the colts are to go in them, at least those with whom galloping exercise may be found to agree, we shall now proceed to point out.

The length of gallop for two-year old colts is generally from half to three quarters of a mile, or, under particular circumstances, a mile. The two former lengths are usually taken by the delicate and hearty colts, and the latter length is occasionally taken by those of stronger constitutions, as the colts of the first class. If a groom is desirous of occasionally sending his colts the latter length in their gallops, the pace should be moderately slow, approaching to half speed, till towards the conclusion of the gallop, where the length of rally begins ; in coming to this part of the ground, the pace, if it is

necessary, but not otherwise, in due time may be increased, so that the colts may finish their gallop at about three parts speed.

The effect galloping exercise (see the chapter on this subject) will have on all horses in training, either as young or old, will of course depend on the pace and length they are made to go in them. It is to be understood, as a general rule, that horses of all ages, on their coming into training, must have, as we have before observed, a sufficient portion of flesh on them; and in training the greatest care must be taken not to strip them of it too suddenly; and this rule more particularly stands good in the training of yearlings, two-year olds, and three-year olds. As the two first-mentioned, if they run in their own classes, have but short lengths to come in their races, they do not require being drawn so fine, nor by any means in the same proportion as some of the five or six-year olds do, that have to come much longer lengths in their running.

The galloping exercise two-year olds will have to take, with a good steady three or four-year old to go before them as occasion may require, will be the same as with the yearlings, (except as to length), according to the effects it is likely to produce, or, more properly speaking, the effects the trainer is desirous of producing on each colt. But as a guidance to the reader on this subject, we beg to refer him to the chapter on Training the Yearlings, from p. 184 to the conclusion.

The manner of sweating two-year olds is of course very similar to that of sweating the yearlings, the only difference to be observed is, that the former, being a year older, and having to run rather longer lengths than the latter, it is necessary that the lengths of their sweats should be proportionably increased, as from two miles and three-quarters to three miles and a quarter; the last-mentioned length will mostly be found to be far enough for the flighty or hearty ones, as we do not wish to take much off the surface of the bodies of two-year olds, any more than we do off of yearlings; we only want to have them sufficiently clear in their wind, and also sufficiently stout to come the length they have to run with others of their year with whom they may be engaged; and the lengths we have mentioned, particularly the latter one, will most likely be found to answer very well for both these purposes. But in the spring of the year, as in the months of March or April, those colts are approaching to three years old, or indeed, if early bred, they are quite so. And as some strong thick ones among them may have to run with horses of all ages, it will be advisable to bring these colts into something like the shape or appearance of race horses, and to make them stout enough to run on at the pace with the last-mentioned horses, to sweat them three miles and a half, or pretty close upon four miles; but in doing the latter length with them the pace proportionably slower, until they come to that part

of the ground where it may be necessary for them, according to their year, to finish their sweats at rather a better pace, more particularly if it be near the time of their coming out to run. And it is further to be observed, that when these colts have to sweat the above lengths, the lightest and best riding boys should be put up to ride them, and in concluding their last sweat or two they should be made to come a good, fair, sweating pace for a little longer length than they have to run, and their sweating gallop should not be less than a mile.

Whenever it may be thought necessary to increase the lengths of either their gallops or sweats, the pace, the constitutions, and ages of all horses must be duly considered, that is, the horses must go proportionably slower, if the length of ground they have to go over in any part of their exercise is increased; and this rule stands good more particularly with young ones. By this we mean to be understood, that the pace is not to be increased until they come to that part of the ground at which it is thought the hearty or light horses can finish or live in their own length of rally in concluding either their gallops or sweats, and which is occasionally necessary for them to do, as when they are drawing near to the time of their running. But with regard to the stronger-constitutioned colts or horses, these, in the concluding of their condition, that is, in their last two sweats, should be made to come at a good telling pace for a little longer length than they have to run,

provided the weights upon them, including the clothes, the exercise saddles, and boys, do not much exceed the weights they will have to carry when they come to post.

To avoid as much as possible enlarging this volume to an unreasonable size, we refer the reader, for the further orders necessary to be given as to how two-year olds are to be sweated, to the two chapters on sweating yearlings (Chaps. 17, 18); and for the details of how they are to be got ready for their sweats, and the treatment to be had recourse to on their being pulled up from them, to two other chapters, the one (Chap. 21) on half a dozen horses doing their first sweat early in March, and the other (Chap. 22) on how horses are to be sweated under all the various circumstances in which it may be necessary to be done, and in which chapter will also be found the precautions that are to be taken to prevent accidents occurring to them.

We shall now suppose that the two yearlings we laid by in April were again taken up in June: that they were both handled; that is to say, that their cavessons were put on, and that they were lounged until they were steady enough for the boys to ride them out to exercise as usual; that they had their physic given them, and that our best colt was progressively forwarded during the summer, so as to keep his memory refreshed; that our second best colt was put into regular training, and that he did occasionally run during the summer with other colts

of his year, the majority of which he beat, and at the October meeting at Newmarket he won a good stake with little difficulty.

Considering the middle of November to have arrived, the racing season may be said to have concluded. Let us now take our leave of Newmarket, and travel our horses off to our home stables. On arriving there we will give our horses and our second best colt ten days or a fortnight's rest, to recover from their journey; but we will at the same time give them such exercise as will keep them sufficiently clear in their wind to come at their best pace for any length we may want them, to try our best colt, or any other colts or horses on the premises. These arrangements, taking place in the month of December, used to be called "the Christmas trials."

As our best colt is now a pretty strong two-year old, and very fresh and well, we will try him for speed with our second best colt, and a couple of others, one of whom should be a three-year old, and which we will consider as the trial horse; the other a four-year old. This latter we put in merely to make up something like a field, or party of horses, so that our best colt, that has never started in public may not be alarmed when he comes to run with other horses in any race in which he may be engaged. The length of the trial ground should be the same as the two-year old course on the flat at Newmarket (see the Calendar). On the two young ones we will put six stone two pounds; on

the trial horse we will put eight stone. This is putting the weights up in favour of the trial horse, because we want to know whether the opinion we formed of our best colt, when we tried him as a yearling, was correct or not.

The orders for riding this and other trials we will fully explain in the next chapter, when we come to try our two young ones again in the spring. Let us consider the above trial to have been run, and decided much in favour of the young ones, the best colt winning very easy by a long way, and that the second best beat the trial horse two clear lengths.

CHAPTER XXIV.

TRYING OF TWO-YEAR OLDS.

In trials, as in races, the weights and lengths must be regulated by the ages of the different horses at the time of their running. But in the present chapter it is not my intention to detain the reader by stating what weights are required under different circumstances, nor how the saddle trusses are to be loaded, as we shall have occasion in a subsequent part of this chapter to enter rather minutely into this subject. At Newmarket, where speed is the principal object, the weights are seldom so high, or the lengths of the courses for the young ones to come over so long, as at most of the spring meetings in the North, where, generally speaking, the horses are not quite so leggy as those that are trained at Newmarket. Consequently, in the North, the young ones, agreeably to their ages, are trained like the old ones, more for stoutness than for speed. And as a greater number of horses are bred in the North than in the South, the breeders in the former country have an opportunity of selecting from a greater number of colts and fillies, and are consc-

quently better enabled to pick out young ones of substance, and less leggy, than those breeders in the South can do, who have not quite so large a produce to choose from. But to return to the trying of our young ones.

When yearlings run at Newmarket, they of course run their own length, the yearling course, a little short of half a mile. (See the Racing Calendar.) The weight they carry in running this length is from eight stone to eight stone three pounds, making the usual allowance of three pounds to fillies, if they run with them. The weights are much the same for the two-year old colts and fillies, when running in their own class and at their own lengths, which, at Newmarket, is a little short of a mile. But when two-year olds are engaged to run, in stakes or plates, with horses of all ages, the weight to be given by a three-year old to a two, in this sort of race, is two stone one, two, three, or four pounds, varying the odd pounds according to circumstances, as whether the weights may be considered to be in favour of the young ones or the old ones, and which will depend on the length and difficulty of the course, as well also as the season of the year, whether in the spring, summer, or autumn. We shall reserve our observations on the weights to be carried by the four, five, and six year old horses for the chapter on the subject of Trying Horses of all Ages.

We have stated the weights that two-year olds

have to carry when running with horses of all ages, because, unless we try them at the weights and lengths they will have to run according to their year, we cannot accurately get at the truth of what they all are, either as to speed or stoutness. To ascertain those facts, we must come to rather a minute description of how our colts are to be tried. The reader may not have forgotten that we have already pointed out the great advantage which various noblemen and gentlemen in this country possess in being the owners of extensive parks, where their horses may be trained under their own eye. We will suppose, therefore, that the boys and horses have now arrived, in the autumn, at some such establishment, and are to be stationary in the home stables for the winter, and that there is no other racing establishment in the neighbourhood sufficiently near to cause us to entertain the slightest suspicion that we are to be over-looked at any time that we may be trying our horses.

It will be remembered, that, in a preceding chapter, we pretty well ascertained the character of our two colts to be of a very superior cast, not only when they were tried as yearlings, but also when they were tried as early two-year olds; and, indeed, unless it was so, it would not be worth our while to take the trouble of getting them ready and trying them again.

Now, we know our best colt to be a good one in private, and that he has extraordinary speed. Our

second best colt has good speed, and is particularly stout. Notwithstanding we know this much of both our colts, yet we cannot say we know the end of either of them; that is, we are not aware how fast or how long they can go; for, in trying them in their own class as yearlings, we found our best colt so very superior to the whole of the twelve he was tried with, that, for him, it could scarcely be called any trial at all; and our second best colt (when in his best form), when running in public, was, as we have noticed, far superior to any of the company he ran in. Therefore, as neither of them have been drawn out to the top of their mark, by weight, pace, or distance, we must now endeavour to come at pretty nearly the truth of what they really can do, not only for speed, but for stoutness; and as our second best colt has been running as a two-year old so well in public, he will be a tolerably good schoolmaster to try our best colt.

The reader is to bear in mind that we are still at our home stables, where, having properly wintered our colts and horses, we have begun in due time, as in the early part of January, to get them all ready to be tried, according to the time of their engagements. We shall now consider the winter to have passed over, and that it is the spring of the year, let us say towards the middle of March, so that our two colts, which we are again about to try, having been foaled early in January, are very nearly three years and three months old, although

considered as two-year olds until the month of May.

It now becomes necessary for us to get as near to facts as we possibly can: we will, therefore, arrange things a little out of the common way, by trying our two colts at higher weights, and longer lengths, than it has formerly been customary to do; and this not only because they are now above three years old, but because, from the treatment and training they have undergone since the second time of their being taken up early in June, their muscular and tendonous powers are considerably improved, both as to strength and substance.

Let us now state what means are to be adopted by which we may be likely to ascertain, as near as possible, the racing powers they possess, both as to speed and stoutness. The first thing I shall mention is the trial ground, which we will suppose to be the last mile and a quarter (which is rather more than the three-years old length at Newmarket) of a two-mile course we have in our park; and, near to the concluding part of this ground, there should be a very gradual rise, to the passing of the winning-post, similar to that of many of our race courses. Now, the colt we will make choice of to try our two-year olds with shall be a good three-year old, such a one as may the year previous have come second in running with a good lot of horses for the Derby, and that has been running on in public in good form with those of his year, as well as with

horses of all ages. He has, therefore, by his running during the summer, proved himself to be a good fair three-year old, and whom we have no reason to suppose has gone back from his usual form. By way of distinguishing him from the others, we will call him "the old one," although he is but three years old.

In the early part of this chapter we mentioned the weights yearlings and two-year olds carried, and the lengths they ran when they were engaged to run in their own separate classes; we also gave the difference of the weights between the two and three years old, whenever they had to run with horses of all ages. The former, on such occasions, giving to the latter from two stone to two stone one, two, three, or four pounds, depending on the length of the course and the weights the two-year olds have to carry, as from six to seven stone, or seven stone two. But as we are now about to try colts instead of running them, we shall deviate from the above-mentioned weights; and it is to be recollected, that, although nominally two-year olds, they are above three. As there is nothing jadish about them, and as the Derby meeting is not far distant, we will try them a mile and a quarter. On the young ones we will put six stone seven pounds, and on the old one, the trial horse, (the three-year old), we will put eight stone seven; this will be giving to the trial horse a year and eight pounds, which is of course more than any two-year old could give to a

three-year old, where the running properties of the former and the latter are equal, allowing for the difference of their ages. The term "year," in the common acceptation of the word, means that one horse gives to another, or others, so many pounds weight, in public running, according as their ages may vary, where the younger horse runs the length of the older; but when a horse is known to possess great superiority from having won any great stake, as the Derby at Epsom, or the St. Leger at Doncaster, or in a handicap, such horse is generally highly weighted, to bring him on a fair equality with the others.

But to return to our trial. Having arranged the length of the trial ground, and the weights the trial horse and the colts are to carry in running over it, our attention will next be directed to the boys we are to put up to ride them. In the fifth chapter of this volume, I recommended the training groom to select from among his exercise boys half a dozen in whom he can place the greatest confidence. These six boys, it is to be taken for granted, that the groom for a couple of years has spared no pains in instructing, in the riding not only of different horses but also of difficult ones. By attending to the instructions of the groom, these boys will in a short time become strong on horseback, and in good riding condition, and are thus enabled to put the groom's orders into practice in the riding of any particular horse. These boys will often have to be put up to

ride many of the light weights privately as well as publicly. We will suppose that the groom has selected, out of the above six boys, two of the lightest and best riders, with the most patient tempers and still tongues; and that they have had to look after the two above mentioned two-years old colts from the time of their first coming into training as yearlings; for the sake of brevity we will call them Sam and Bill; the former looking after the best colt, and the latter looking after the second best. These two boys we intend to ride the colts in their present trials, and on the trial horse we will put our own jockey, who is, as we have described, an honest man, and in whom the strictest confidence may be placed. Now, it may so happen from our best colt being so very superior, that he may, in running the trial at the weights and length mentioned, beat the three-year old—the trial horse. The latter may, unknown to us, have gone back some few pounds; that is, he may not now be in as good running form as we supposed him to be; in which case we could not say for certain, that our colts had for the whole length of the trial ground been gradually drawn out to the top of their pace. To prevent our being deceived in this respect, we will put in, to go with the colts in the trial, a good four-year old, lightly weighted, and we will put upon him Charles, our head lad. But we do not select this four-year old as having any thing to do with the trial, but only to go up near the head of the colts, so that in case the trial

horse should be getting beat near the conclusion, the four-year old may come on and finish them at their best pace, without any attempt to defeat them.

We will now proceed to explain the method of weighing the jockey, the lad, and the two boys who are to ride them in their trials. In Vol. I. p. 22, I recommended that there should be kept in the training groom's study one of the dial plate weighing-machines, to which of course there is to be attached a weighing-chair, (for a description of this chair, see again Vol. I. p. 261). It is to be observed, that there should not be, on the premises of any racing establishment, either private or public, any other convenience for the riders to be weighed than the one above-mentioned; if there is, the boys will be frequently weighing each other, whereby they will all accurately ascertain their weights, at least this was the practice amongst exercise boys when I was one myself. This machine is so constructed, that the person who is being weighed, if he sits properly back in the chair, is unable to see the index on the dial plate, and as the index immediately on his rising points to 0, he is of course unable to ascertain how much he weighed. This is a matter of some importance, as the training groom is thus enabled to conceal their exact weight from the jockeys and boys, more especially the latter, if they are too much inclined to talk. Of course, the trainer admits only one at a time into his room to be weighed, and

makes a memorandum of the precise weight of each. Having ascertained their exact weights, he has next to calculate how much each will require to make up the proper weight for the particular horse he may be going to ride in the trial, and this is done by means of his loaded saddles and trusses, all of which should be privately marked according to the weight of each. (For the method of making racing saddles and trusses, and the various occasions on which they are to be used, see Vol. I. p. 216.)

Some of my readers may perhaps be of opinion, that the secrecy I have recommended on this as upon many other occasions is quite unnecessary, especially in a private trial; but a very slight acquaintance with the turf will convince them of the propriety of these precautions. In the third volume I shall have to describe a still more secret method of making up the weights of the riders, when we come to try the horses of all ages; and more particularly so, when public jockeys are put up to ride horses that may be engaged in any very great match or stakes, and which horses may be standing to be trained at a public racing establishment.

Notwithstanding we have been thus particular in laying down injunctions for secrecy in weighing riders for trials or races, yet no precautions can dispense with the necessity of a perfect good understanding, as regards racing, between the private training groom and the private jockey belonging to the racing establishment of any nobleman or gentle-

man, and strict integrity towards their employer; if this does not exist, they should be parted; for, unless the above two men agree to do the best they can for their employer, the business of the establishment cannot go on with that certainty with which it ought. But from the description we have given of our jockey, and from the long and repeated experience we may be supposed to have had of his integrity in all matters of racing in which he has been engaged, it is not to be apprehended that any jealous suspicion can exist between him and the training groom. When the jockey is wanted to ride, the trainer apprizes him of it in due time, as well as of the weight, if a light one, as perhaps eight stone, he will require him to be on such a day. The jockey instantly prepares, by wasting or punishing, (taking but small portions of food), to get himself down to the weight. But when the weight he is ordered to ride is very high, the requisite increase is effected by means of a loaded saddle or trusses, or indeed, perhaps, by both. While the jockey is thus employed, the trainer quietly by himself in his study makes up with the saddles and trusses the weights which the two boys Sam and Bill are to ride the two two-year olds in the approaching trial; and as to the weight Charles, the head lad, on the four-year old, should be, it is not of much importance, except that he must not exceed eight stone and a half. With respect to the four-year old, care must be taken that he is in sufficient good form to come, if

necessary, his best pace in the conclusion of the trial.

The night previous to the horses being tried, they are of course to be set, that is, their setting muzzles are to be put on the last thing at night, or early in the morning, depending on what sort of horses they may be, as well as the time of day when they are to run the trial. The training groom and head lad in due time take the trial saddles into the stables, and put them securely on the four horses in question, who have been previously bridled and brought round in their stalls, their heads being attended to by the boys who look after them, and stripped of their standing clothes. To prevent the chance of the saddles shifting, those who are to ride the horses are to be handed up by the leg in the usual manner, instead of being allowed to get on the horses while they are standing in the stalls, by the help of the stirrup. The riders being mounted, and having knotted their reins, the stable door is opened, and the horses are now ridden out to the trial ground, attended by the groom on his hack, at a proper distance, who usually at this time gives his orders as to how the trial is to be run.

We will here make a few general remarks on the subject of riding trials, as the manner in which horses are to be ridden in them differs so very widely from that in which they are to be ridden in their races. Now the reader is to bear in mind that the trial horse, virtually speaking, has nothing to do with

respect to how the other horses he is trying may run on with him; for, as soon as they are started, the jockey on the trial horse is to commence making such running with him immediately from the start as he thinks he can safely rate him on at for the whole length of the trial ground; that is, he is made to come for the above length in as short a time as he possibly can without being over marked, and to have been so evenly and gradually well rated by the jockey as to have nothing more left him in the way of running. The proper pace our jockey will be easily able to manage, as he has ridden all the horses in the establishment, both in public and in private, and knows well the best pace they can come in their different lengths. Now the head lad, Charles, and the two boys, Sam and Bill, whom we have described as having to ride in the trial, know pretty well from experience what they are going about. The two latter are fully aware that they are to get the colts they ride well away from the start with the trial horse, and that they are to stay with him in the trial as long as they can, and to beat him as far as they can; but they know also that they are not to do either the one or the other of those things at the expense of abusing their colts, by persevering too much with them, or by having recourse to too severe means, as that of spurring or striking them unnecessarily.

After what has just been said of the knowledge of the jockey, the head lad, and the two boys, we

will return to the training groom, whom we left about to give his orders how the horses are to be ridden; and although these orders are concise, still they are sufficiently expressive, and are quite intelligible to those who have been brought up in the stables from early life. Speaking to the jockey, as to how he is to ride the trial horse, he says—"As soon as you see the young ones on their legs, and settled in their stride, go you away home with your horse in as short a time as you can, without oversetting him." To Sam, who is on the best colt, he says—"You know your colt is a free resolute goer, therefore be sure you keep a steady hold of his head, and sit as quiet and as still on him as you possibly can. As Mr. Day, on the trial horse will, I expect, go fast enough for both of you, so do not you attempt on any account whatever to draw your colt out. If Mr. Day finds his horse in getting near home is beat for pace, he will in due time call to Charles on the four-year old to come head and girth with you, which will be quite a sufficient challenge for your colt to finish the length, and pass the winning-post at his best pace, which is what I want your colt to do; and as he is a free ready comer, this is I expect what he will do, without any aid of yours, as hustling, spurring, or striking him. Therefore mind, Sam, you have nothing to do but to keep a steady hold of his head." The orders he gives to the boy on the second best colt will be to this effect —"Bill, you know what a thick idle colt that is of

yours; be sure you do not let him humbug you. As soon as you have got him well away with the other horses, and he has settled in his stride, do not forget to observe, sufficiently early, the pace the trial horse is going, and be sure you stop with him as long as you can. I mean by this, you are to make use of your colt in good time, by getting busy at his head and rousing him along; but observe, I do not mean that you are to persevere with him too severely, (never attempt any thing of that sort, and particularly with a yearling or two-year old). What I want you to do with your colt on the present occasion is, as soon as he is settled in his stride, to begin immediately, but gradually, to draw him well out, by keeping fast hold of his head; and, as you find it necessary from the pace the trial horse is going, you must now and then hustle your colt along; and further, if you find by the pace they have been going, and that are likely to go on with it in finishing the length of the trial ground, and it may appear to you too fast for your colt, although in reality it may not be the case, to be certain you are right, you had better take a good pull at him, and prick him on once or twice with your spurs, speaking sharply to him at the same time; then get up your whip and flourish it over either his head or your own, and if he do not increase his stride from being thus called upon to come in concluding the trial, if he is up and well placed among them, (but not otherwise on any account), give him a blow or two to

make him finish at his best pace, just as he is about passing the winning-post. Now, unless you ride your colt as I have ordered you to do, he is so very craving a one we may be deceived in him." The orders to be given to Charles, who rides the four-year old, will be very concise, as the head lad is always supposed, from long experience, to know well what he is going about. The trainer therefore need only say to him—"Charles, as the trial ground is quite straight, there is no great occasion for you to study much about the choice of places at the start. If Mr. Day in going off takes the whip-hand, take your place sufficiently wide on the outside of them, and just keep your horse's head up or near to the quarters of the two colts, for, in case Mr. Day should find his horse not quite fast enough in the finish to draw our best colt pretty well out to the top of his pace, he will turn his head and give you a hint to come closer up with your horse; therefore mind to keep your eye upon him, and if you find he wishes you to take up the running, take a pull at your horse, and go immediately up, head and girth with the best colt, for I expect he will be in the front; and, if you find it necessary to urge him to the top of his pace, you may in the last few strides home go a little farther up and lay head and neck with him, but on no account defeat him. If he should have shaken off the other two horses in the running, he will have done all I want him to do in this trial; so be sure you let him win from your horse. I would

not on any account he should be disappointed of winning the trial under the circumstances I am now stating to you."

The trainer then gives the following general directions :—"All of you go down a little below the start, and, having given your horses a short gallop to set them on their legs, pull them up and turn them about; then walk them up as evenly and as quietly as you can towards the start. When Mr. Day sees you are all ready, he will give you the word—Off! You two boys attend to the running that may be made for you, and be sure neither of you deviate in any way from the orders I have given you as regards the riding of each of your colts."

The trainer now leaves the horses that are about to be tried, and goes on his hack up towards the winning-post, placing himself at such a suitable distance in width from it, and in length within or below it, as to give him an opportunity of seeing as much of the running as he possibly can, and not only how each horse may be placed in the trial, but how well each of them, after being challenged or called upon to come, can finish the length in passing the winning post.

We will suppose that the most material part of the trial was run strictly according to the trainer's orders, and that the colts have come in it as follows :—Our best colt having beat the old one, the trial horse, cleverly, nearly half a distance from home,

and when challenged by the four-year old to come, ran on and won the trial—our second best colt being a good second to him. The general practical directions we have here stated as to the trying of two-year olds should not be deviated from without sufficient reason. If we want to find out the end of a good one, we must try him as to weight reasonably high, and in the same proportion we must increase the length of the trial ground, so as to give to a colt that may be considered a regular flier sufficient scope to shew (without allowing him to be abused) the powers he may possess, as to how fast or how long he can go under a weight a little higher than he has a right to carry. We have therefore stated this second trial to have terminated thus, merely to shew how we are to make the most we can of such a colt as we have represented our best one to be; and in the next chapter we shall recommend how the groom is quietly to turn those matters over in his own mind.

The above trial is supposed to have taken place at our home stables about the middle of March, just previously to our travelling the whole of our horses off to Newmarket, at which town we will now consider them to have arrived. From this time to the running for the Derby, which will be this year on the seventh of June, we shall have about twelve weeks to do what we think is best for our colts. Of this time we will take three weeks to give to all our horses, according as their constitutions and engage-

ments will permit, a couple or three doses of physic each. This we advise being done for the purpose of taking the little staleness out of them which the work they have been doing to get them ready for their trials may have occasioned, as well as to refresh them after their travelling. When they have recovered from their physic, we shall have eight weeks left to get our colts and horses ready to run; the former for the Derby, and the latter for whatever engagement they may be entered in.

The time we have here allowed is quite as long as is necessary for getting horses ready to run that have previously been trained or treated in the way we have already mentioned, as by keeping them longer, provided they have been on dry nutritious food, without physic, would be more likely to injure than improve them. Light flighty horses, however, require but a very short time indeed to get them ready to run; consequently they require little or no physic; but it is a very different thing with horses of strong constitutions; that sort of horses require, according to their ages and the work they have been doing, and the races they have run, to be physicked at proper intervals, about the time we have mentioned, so as to cool and refresh them. Unless this plan is had recourse to with them, they will not only get stale in their conditions, but they will get hot and feverish, and be more subject to fall amiss from attacks of inflammation.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE TRAINING GROOM'S REFLECTIONS, AFTER HAVING TRIED A COUPLE OF COLTS, BOTH AS YEARLINGS AND AS TWO-YEAR OLDS, WITH THE OPINION HE HAS FORMED OF THEM AS TO HOW THEY MAY RUN.

In this chapter it is my purpose to state what further is to be done with the two colts which we are supposed to have been trying as yearlings and two-year olds. The trainer, in musing over the pros and the cons relative to the two colts, but particularly as to the best one, with which he thinks he has a right to win the Derby, says—"It is true we have only tried him privately, yet I think we have found him to be the best we ever did try, and he is not only a fine lengthy colt, but he is of good substance, and is therefore likely to run on; his speed appears to be extraordinary; for in his trials with the colts and fillies as a yearling, he went with great ease clean away from the whole of them, and beat the colt that was second to him several lengths, without his ever being called upon to do so. Now, we know from public running, that our second best colt is

any thing but a bad one; for from the yearling race (already mentioned), in which he ran, we have a right to think pretty highly of him, and the more so, as he was not then, for the want of a little more time, quite at his best form, and the race he ran in must, according to the account our jockey gave of it, have been truly run, with all but our own colt, and he was well up as a third; and the whole of them must have come their best pace for as long a length as they could in the running, as the other three colts, admitting they were bad ones, could never have been beat so very far from home as they were but by the pace; for, from what I saw of the race myself, they were beat from the early and resolute running that the winning colt made of his own accord, although with difficulty, against the colt that was second to him. But now, supposing from bad management that the three last colts that were in the race did not come out as near their best form of running as they ought, they could not under those circumstances have taken as good a measurement of the colts in front of them as we have done; they must therefore be more in the dark than we are. However, we must not lose sight of them: if I should not meet them with any colt of ours, other men of course will, so that we shall know bye-and-bye whether they are good for any thing or not. In looking back to the trials of our two colts as two-year olds, the lengths they have run, and the weights they have carried in them, were unusually high for

colts of their age; yet, as far as I could observe at each trial, our best colt appeared to win easy; and, in questioning Sam, who rode him, he said, "he did not think his colt had been drawn out to the top of his pace." Again, in looking back to the public running of our second best colt, to say nothing of what he met and beat in the country, in the October meeting at Newmarket, he won a good stake, running not only in a strong field, but also in good company, and which goes to prove him to be a pretty good colt. Therefore, from the above calculation, our best colt must not only be a regular flier, but I think he can run on. However, in his next trial, we will see how fast and how long he can fly under the weight, and for rather a longer length than he will have to run in the first race. It is true that private trials are not at all times to be depended on like public running; but, as our colt is so very good-tempered, and from his having been tried in rather large parties, I do not think he is likely either to swerve or shut up when running in public; because, when we took him with the other horses to the April meeting, in our neighbourhood, (where our second-best colt ran), merely to accustom him to the crowd, he was but a yearling; yet, from the little I saw of him, he kindly followed the horses on each day of their running at the meeting, up between the rails of the course, through the crowd, to the passing of the winning post, without shewing any symptoms of either fear or vice; and, on questioning Charles,

the head lad, who was on a hack riding with him, and Sam, who rode him, they both said he was not the least alarmed in going up between the rails, nor did he shew any symptoms of being so after he was pulled up, nor on his being walked about among the crowd on the outside the rails; and what goes further to prove this is, the colt, on returning home each day from the meeting, ate, drank, and rested well; in fact, he has always been a good doer, as well in as out of the stable. And, if we are fortunate enough to get him well to post, that is, if nothing happens to him, either from disease or accident, as he is well engaged, he will be likely to do us some good. I think, if he comes to post in his proper form, we have a right to win the Derby with him. This stake is not only an interesting one, but it is a respectable one to win, and it is also a valuable one; and, it being a play and pay race, it makes the betting P. P.; and, as we have both colts in the race, our second-best colt having good speed, and being so very stout, as from his public running he appears to be, it will, I think, be rather difficult for any party of horses to continue to run fast enough and long enough to draw him well out and beat him, before he gets sufficiently near home as to be within the length of rally in which our best colt can live or finish at near the top of his pace, when called upon by his jockey, or challenged by any horse in the company he is running with, to the passing of the winning post.

The trainer now begins further to calculate on what steps he had better take to ensure, as near as he possibly can, the winning of the above race with the colt in question. He says—We must take every precaution to keep things as quiet as possible. Luckily, our stables and training ground are so privately situated, that what we have hitherto been doing with our colts, and more particularly as regards the best one, cannot be known; we may, therefore, be able to bring him out, not exactly as a dark horse, his pedigree being known; yet, as he has never started, we may expect, among ourselves, to be able to prevent his getting up a very great favourite; if we can do this, he may be considered, in the betting market, as rather approaching to an outsider; the odds, then, would most likely be rather high against him, in which case he would come out as a dark horse with the public. Therefore, instead of betting round, we must begin to take the long odds that will in all probability be against our colt; and, although we have each of us money enough to back ourselves on in the losing of a small stake to the winning of a large one, there is no occasion for us to risk the losing of the former to win the latter, as there will be plenty of time for us to hedge our money before the race is run; or rather, our master, who luckily for us is a very good judge, in balancing his book will take care to do this little matter for us, as well as for himself, if he sees occasion for it; so that, if our colt should be

beat, we are, with regard to our money matters, but where we were; and, if he should win, each of us will draw a handsome stake. Our master, our jockey, and the head lad, have all very still tongues, and for their own sakes, in the present instance, they will take care to keep them so. But, with Sam and Bill, I must have some small quiet talk: for the time they have been in the stables they have kept very light; and, as they ride both so well, I have been obliged almost constantly to put them up to ride not only different horses, but very good ones; and whatever I have wanted to know, as to what any such horses were capable of doing in regard to the changes they may have made towards improvement in their gallops, sweats, and trials, I have at all times given those two boys the very best orders I possibly could, how they were to ride on all such occasions; and whenever I have thought proper to question them, after they have pulled up their horses, I have mostly found their answers to be pretty correct. Sam is a very patient rider, and, for the experience he has had, he is a tolerable good judge of pace. Bill is very strong and determined on horseback, and can go very near to making the most of a craving horse, in gradually drawing him out to the top of his pace; so that for me to attempt to deceive these boys, as to what the two colts they have been looking after, and at all times have been riding in their exercise as well as in their trials, and particularly in the last one, can do, would be downright folly.

Therefore, to make all as safe as we can, they must, if they wish it, be allowed to stand their money in the betting. As the time is now drawing near for us all to move off to Newmarket, and as our boys will be meeting with their old companions there, some of whom may endeavour to draw from Sam and Bill their opinions of the two colts they look after; or perhaps, through an unsuspected channel, some person may attempt to corrupt either or both of them, by offering them a bribe to tell what they know of their two colts, in which should they succeed it would destroy the chance we think we have got of doing some good for the stable, I will, to-morrow, with a view to prevent any thing of this kind from taking place, have some talk with Sam and Bill. I must also have much the same sort of talk with Tom, for he is a good judge of pace; and from the circumstance of my having so often to put him up to go before young ones at the time of their doing a bit of work, and on a horse too that he knows can come from end to end; and as he also knows that we keep this same horse principally for the purpose of telling us a true story about our two and three-year olds; and has on this same horse, and for the same purpose, occasionally gone before the two colts in question; and will have to do the same sort of thing at Newmarket, previous to our trying them there at their last trial, as well also as at Epsom, when we are about to finish them for their races, he must have a pretty good idea of what we expect

from our colts—we must not, therefore, if Tom chooses to stand his money, shut him out of the betting. Although none of those three boys know any thing of the weights they have been riding in private, yet they have a tolerable idea of what weights their colts ought to have carried in their trials, so as to enable us to judge, with some degree of accuracy, how they may be likely to run in public—I must therefore, when talking to those boys, shew them that I am placing some confidence in them.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE TRAINING GROOM CONVERSING PRIVATELY WITH THREE OF HIS BEST RIDING BOYS.

The trainer takes an opportunity in due time, as on some morning after the stables are shut up, of saying to the boys, Sam, Bill, and Tom, whom we have mentioned in the last chapter, "You will come to me in my private room, after you have had your breakfast." The boys having assembled in the room, the conversation that takes place between the parties will be much to the following effect:—"I have sent for you three boys, for the purpose of cautioning each of you to keep your tongues very still; not, I confess, that I have any reason to find fault with any of you for not having kept them so, as regards what any of the horses we have hitherto had in the stables have been capable of doing; yet there is no harm in my putting all three of you on your guard just now; because, from what the two two-year olds that you, Sam and Bill, look after, have been doing here in their private trials, I have rather a good opinion of them, but particularly of your's, Sam." Who in reply may say—"I do not know what my colt may do in public, but I am

sure he is the fastest I was ever on the back of in private: he has always hitherto, in the running of his trials, beat every thing he has been tried with, without my ever having had occasion to call upon him to come; all I have had to do, when riding him, has been to sit still on him, and keep a good steady hold of his head; he then appears to me to go quite away from his horses with great ease; so I do not think it is known yet how fast he can run." The trainer, in addressing the boy who looks after the second-best colt, and who has ridden him in public, says—"I have not a bad opinion of that colt of your's, Bill." And he would probably reply—"I like my colt very well; I know he is not as fast as Sam's, but he can come well home; I do not care what running any party of horses may make that my colt is running with; and the earlier they begin to do so, the better for my colt, even if it is a little longer length than one of his year ought to come, provided the weight he has to carry is proportionably light, according to the increased length he may have to run. It must be a good one that can shake him off; he can not only come from end to end, but in taking a pull at him he always finishes well; and what goes to prove this is, I have never once had occasion to get up my whip, at least not to strike him with it, in either of the races I have ridden him. In the race he was beat in you said, when giving me my orders, 'That if I found the horses he had to run with were too

fast for him, not to be severe upon him, for that he was not so well as he ought to be:' nor could he be so, for, as I told you, after weighing, he gave over running almost a distance before we came to the winning post; yet I do not think he ran in better company in that race than he did in any of his other races, but, as he was not well, I could not expect him to win." The trainer, in addressing himself to the third boy, says—"That horse of your's, Tom, has been going before these two colts when they have been doing any thing like a bit of work." Tom, in reply, says—"Yes, he has; and they have both kept closer to the old horse than I remember any of their year ever to have done before; and, what is more, I think the old one is as fresh and as well as he ever was, for the length he usually comes." "Well, Tom, (says the trainer), we must keep that to ourselves. You are the only three boys in the stable that can have any idea of what the two colts we have been talking about may be likely to do, for, as you are aware, not one of the other boys has ever been on or near the ground when we have wanted to do any thing of any consequence with them. Do not, on any account, say a word to the other boys in our own stable, or to any one out of it, about the colts. If you three keep your own counsels, we may do some good for the stable; and if any of you like to stand the chance of losing a small stake to the winning of a large one, you may, as our master will let you stand

your money on his book. And, that you may have no occasion to be making bets with the boys of other stables, only tell me, in a day or two, what you can afford to stake, and I will take care to get it done for you. Why I have taken this opportunity of talking to you just now is, as you know we shall soon move off with the horses to Newmarket, had I not cautioned you as I have now done, one or the other of you might unintentionally let slip among your old companions that we had in our stable a better nag or two than the world knew about. Were either of you to have been so unguarded, it would soon have been publicly known, which would have set aside any good we could fairly have done for ourselves. Another thing I want to guard you against is, that when at Newmarket, or any other racing place, or at any racing establishment to which we may go with the horses, never to be taken by surprise by any person whatever that may unexpectedly come up and talk to you, with a view of drawing you out as to what knowledge you may have with respect to the stables, or as to the properties, either good or bad, of any horse you may look after. Should a person come up to ask you questions on such matters, tell him, what is very likely to be true, that you do not know any thing about the horses in the stables, and then walk away from him. If such person should still persevere with you to obtain his object, and perhaps offer you a bribe, shew him that you are above any such dis-

honourable conduct, by looking at him as you have been taught to look at a vicious horse, while attending to his head when he is being scraped after his sweat; that is, look at such a man full in the face, fix both your eyes on his, and then again tell him that he is only losing time to attempt to go flat-catching with you, for that you are too good a judge to be landed as one. If you talk to him in this way, he will most likely not trouble you any more. Always bear in mind, boys, that honesty, as I have often told you before, is the best policy, and that secrecy is one of the very essential requisites we should all possess. There is no harm in your keeping your ears open, but, whatever you do, be sure you keep your mouths shut as regards any knowledge you may have of what any of the horses in our stables may be capable of doing. I feel very confident you will all do as I have desired you, in being particularly careful what you say on the subject of horses to any description of person whatever. You may now go."

Here ends the conversation between the groom and his boys; and here also ends the second volume. In the third we shall endeavour to lay down all the matter that further concerns our two-year olds, as in what manner they are again to be tried previous to their coming out to run, and at what time we shall travel them to Epsom, and, when there, how we shall finish them as to the length and pace they will have to go in their work, when the time is drawing

near for them to come to post, and how they are each to be set agreeable to their constitutions; with orders to the jockeys how each colt is to be ridden, so as to insure us, barring an accident, every prospect of honestly winning that valuable and very interesting stake, the Derby.

In this volume we have principally confined ourselves to the training of horses for the Newmarket lengths; but in the ensuing volume, which is preparing for the press, where we shall have to describe the training of horses of all ages, we will make our remarks on the varying of the different lengths horses are to go in their work to bring them sufficiently stout to come the lengths they may be wanted to run upon any occasion; and in other chapters will be found all the necessary information on the entering, training, running and riding, of different horses according to their ages, the lengths they have to run in their races, with all other practical details connected with horse racing; and, if it is not considered that we may be entering too far into the secrets of office, we intend to make some further remarks on the subject of money matters.

END OF VOL. II.

NORMAN AND SKEEN, PRINTERS, MAIDEN LANE, COVENT GARDEN.

2/ae/-

VO